

```
documentclass{...}
\package{...}
```

```
\begin{document}
```

```
\title{...}
\author{...}
\address{...}
\te
```

George Grätzer

```
\begin{abstract}
```

abstract

```
\end{abstract}
\key
```

```
\section{...}
```

```
\section{...}
```

```
\begin{hebbibliograph
```

```
\end{tbbibliography}
```

```
\end{document}
```

first column

$$f(x) = x + yz$$
$$h(x) = xy + xz + yz$$

second column

$$g(x) = x + y$$
$$k(x) = (x + y)$$

intercolumn space

alignment points
of first column

More Math Into

L^AT_EX

5th Edition

EXTRAS ONLINE

 Springer

More
Math Into L^AT_EX

George Grätzer

More
Math Into L^AT_EX

Fifth Edition

 Springer

George Grätzer
Toronto, ON, Canada

ISBN 978-3-319-23795-4 ISBN 978-3-319-23796-1 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-23796-1

Library of Congress Control Number: 2015953672

Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

© Springer International Publishing AG 2016

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

To the **Volunteers**

without whose dedication,
over 25 years,
this book could not have been done

and to the young ones

Emma (10),

Kate (8),

Jay (3)

Short Contents

Foreword	xxi
Preface to the fifth edition	xxv
Introduction	xxvii
I Mission Impossible	1
1 Short course	3
2 And a few more things...	31
II Text and Math	43
3 Typing text	45
4 Text environments	101
5 Typing math	135
6 More math	171
7 Multiline math displays	195
III Document Structure	233
8 Documents	235
9 The AMS article document class	261

10 Legacy documents	291
IV PDF Documents	303
11 The PDF file format	305
12 Presentations	313
13 Illustrations	349
V Customization	365
14 Commands and environments	367
VI Long Documents	425
15 <code>BIBTEX</code>	427
16 <i>MakeIndex</i>	455
17 Books in <code>L^AT_EX</code>	471
A Math symbol tables	491
B Text symbol tables	505
C Some background	511
D <code>L^AT_EX</code> and the Internet	525
E PostScript fonts	531
F <code>L^AT_EX</code> localized	535
G <code>L^AT_EX</code> on the iPad	539
H Final thoughts	553
Bibliography	557
Index	561

Contents

Foreword	xxi
Preface to the fifth edition	xxv
Introduction	xxvii
Is this book for you?	xxvii
What's in the book?	xxix
Conventions	xxxix
I Mission Impossible	1
1 Short course	3
1.1 Getting started	5
1.1.1 Your L ^A T _E X	5
1.1.2 Sample files	5
1.1.3 Editing cycle	5
1.1.4 Typing the source file	6
1.2 The keyboard	7
1.3 Your first text notes	8
1.4 Lines too wide	11
1.5 A note with formulas	12
1.6 The building blocks of a formula	14
1.7 Displayed formulas	18
1.7.1 Equations	18
1.7.2 Symbolic referencing	19
1.7.3 Aligned formulas	21
1.7.4 Cases	23
1.8 The anatomy of a document	24

1.9	Your own commands	26
1.10	Adding an illustration	26
1.11	The anatomy of a presentation	27
2	And a few more things...	31
2.1	Structure	31
2.2	Auxiliary files	32
2.3	Logical and visual design	35
2.4	General error messages	35
2.5	Errors in math	38
2.6	Your errors: Davey's Dos and Don'ts	39
II	Text and Math	43
3	Typing text	45
3.1	The keyboard	46
3.1.1	Basic keys	46
3.1.2	Special keys	47
3.1.3	Prohibited keys	47
3.2	Words, sentences, and paragraphs	48
3.2.1	Spacing rules	48
3.2.2	Periods	49
3.3	Commanding L ^A T _E X	51
3.3.1	Commands and environments	51
3.3.2	Scope	55
3.3.3	Types of commands	57
3.4	Symbols not on the keyboard	58
3.4.1	Quotation marks	58
3.4.2	Dashes	59
3.4.3	Ties or nonbreakable spaces	60
3.4.4	Special characters	60
3.4.5	Ellipses	62
3.4.6	Ligatures	62
3.4.7	Accents and symbols in text	63
3.4.8	Logos and dates	63
3.4.9	Hyphenation	65
3.5	Comments and footnotes	68
3.5.1	Comments	69
3.5.2	Footnotes	71
3.6	Changing font characteristics	72
3.6.1	Basic font characteristics	72
3.6.2	Document font families	73

3.6.3	Shape commands	75
3.6.4	Italic corrections	76
3.6.5	Series	77
3.6.6	Size changes	77
3.6.7	Orthogonality	78
3.6.8	Obsolete two-letter commands	79
3.6.9	Low-level commands	79
3.7	Lines, paragraphs, and pages	80
3.7.1	Lines	80
3.7.2	Paragraphs	83
3.7.3	Pages	84
3.7.4	Multicolumn printing	86
3.8	Spaces	86
3.8.1	Horizontal spaces	86
3.8.2	Vertical spaces	88
3.8.3	Relative spaces	90
3.8.4	Expanding spaces	90
3.9	Boxes	91
3.9.1	Line boxes	91
3.9.2	Frame boxes	93
3.9.3	Paragraph boxes	95
3.9.4	Marginal comments	96
3.9.5	Solid boxes	97
3.9.6	Fine tuning boxes	99
4	Text environments	101
4.1	Some general rules for displayed text environments	102
4.2	List environments	102
4.2.1	Numbered lists	102
4.2.2	Bulleted lists	103
4.2.3	Captioned lists	104
4.2.4	A rule and combinations	104
4.3	Style and size environments	107
4.4	Proclamations (theorem-like structures)	108
4.4.1	The full syntax	112
4.4.2	Proclamations with style	113
4.5	Proof environments	115
4.6	Tabular environments	117
4.6.1	Table styles	124
4.7	Tabbing environments	125
4.8	Miscellaneous displayed text environments	127

5	Typing math	135
5.1	Math environments	136
5.2	Spacing rules	138
5.3	Equations	139
5.4	Basic constructs	140
5.4.1	Arithmetic operations	141
5.4.2	Binomial coefficients	143
5.4.3	Ellipses	143
5.4.4	Integrals	144
5.4.5	Roots	145
5.4.6	Text in math	146
5.4.7	Hebrew and Greek letters	147
5.5	Delimiters	147
5.5.1	Stretching delimiters	149
5.5.2	Delimiters that do not stretch	150
5.5.3	Limitations of stretching	151
5.5.4	Delimiters as binary relations	152
5.6	Operators	152
5.6.1	Operator tables	152
5.6.2	Congruences	154
5.6.3	Large operators	155
5.6.4	Multiline subscripts and superscripts	157
5.7	Math accents	157
5.8	Stretchable horizontal lines	159
5.8.1	Horizontal braces	159
5.8.2	Overlines and underlines	160
5.8.3	Stretchable arrow math symbols	160
5.9	Building a formula step-by-step	161
5.10	Formula Gallery	164
6	More math	171
6.1	Spacing of symbols	171
6.1.1	Classification	172
6.1.2	Three exceptions	172
6.1.3	Spacing commands	174
6.1.4	Examples	174
6.1.5	The phantom command	175
6.2	The STIX math symbols	176
6.2.1	Swinging it	176
6.2.2	The STIX project	177
6.2.3	Installation and usage	177
6.3	Building new symbols	178

6.3.1	Stacking symbols	178
6.3.2	Negating and side-setting symbols	181
6.3.3	Changing the type of a symbol	182
6.4	Math alphabets and symbols	182
6.4.1	Math alphabets	183
6.4.2	Math symbol alphabets	184
6.4.3	Bold math symbols	185
6.4.4	Size changes	186
6.4.5	Continued fractions	187
6.5	Vertical spacing	187
6.6	Tagging and grouping	189
6.7	Miscellaneous	191
6.7.1	Generalized fractions	191
6.7.2	Boxed formulas	193
7	Multiline math displays	195
7.1	Visual Guide	195
7.1.1	Columns	195
7.1.2	Subsidiary math environments	197
7.1.3	Adjusted columns	198
7.1.4	Aligned columns	198
7.1.5	Touring the Visual Guide	198
7.2	Gathering formulas	199
7.3	Splitting long formulas	200
7.4	Some general rules	202
7.4.1	General rules	202
7.4.2	Subformula rules	203
7.4.3	Breaking and aligning formulas	205
7.4.4	Numbering groups of formulas	205
7.5	Aligned columns	207
7.5.1	An <code>align</code> variant	209
7.5.2	<code>eqnarray</code> , the ancestor of <code>align</code>	209
7.5.3	The subformula rule revisited	210
7.5.4	The <code>alignat</code> environment	211
7.5.5	Inserting text	213
7.6	Aligned subsidiary math environments	215
7.6.1	Subsidiary variants	215
7.6.2	<code>Split</code>	217
7.7	Adjusted columns	220
7.7.1	Matrices	220
7.7.2	Arrays	224
7.7.3	Cases	227

7.8	Commutative diagrams	228
7.9	Adjusting the display	230

III Document Structure 233

8	Documents 235
8.1	The structure of a document 236
8.2	The preamble 237
8.3	Top matter 239
8.3.1	Abstract 239
8.4	Main matter 239
8.4.1	Sectioning 240
8.4.2	Cross-referencing 243
8.4.3	Floating tables and illustrations 248
8.5	Back matter 251
8.5.1	Bibliographies in articles 251
8.5.2	Simple indexes 257
8.6	Visual design 258
9	The AMS article document class 261
9.1	Why <code>amsart</code> ? 261
9.1.1	Submitting an article to the AMS 261
9.1.2	Submitting an article to Algebra Universalis 262
9.1.3	Submitting to other journals 262
9.1.4	Submitting to conference proceedings 263
9.2	The top matter 263
9.2.1	Article information 263
9.2.2	Author information 265
9.2.3	AMS information 269
9.2.4	Multiple authors 270
9.2.5	Examples 271
9.2.6	Abstract 274
9.3	The sample article 274
9.4	Article templates 282
9.5	Options 285
9.6	The AMS packages 288
10	Legacy documents 291
10.1	Articles and reports 291
10.1.1	Top matter 292
10.1.2	Options 294
10.2	Letters 296

10.3 The L ^A T _E X distribution	298
10.3.1 Tools	300

IV PDF Documents 303

11 The PDF file format 305

11.1 PostScript and PDF	305
11.1.1 PostScript	305
11.1.2 PDF	306
11.1.3 Hyperlinks	307
11.2 Hyperlinks for L ^A T _E X	307
11.2.1 Using hyperref	307
11.2.2 backref and colorlinks	308
11.2.3 Bookmarks	309
11.2.4 Additional commands	310

12 Presentations 313

12.1 Quick and dirty beamer	314
12.1.1 First changes	314
12.1.2 Changes in the body	315
12.1.3 Making things prettier	315
12.1.4 Adjusting the navigation	316
12.2 Baby beamers	319
12.2.1 Overlays	321
12.2.2 Understanding overlays	323
12.2.3 More on the \only and \onslide commands	325
12.2.4 Lists as overlays	327
12.2.5 Out of sequence overlays	329
12.2.6 Blocks and overlays	330
12.2.7 Links	331
12.2.8 Columns	335
12.2.9 Coloring	336
12.3 The structure of a presentation	339
12.3.1 Longer presentations	341
12.3.2 Navigation symbols	341
12.4 Notes	342
12.5 Themes	343
12.6 Planning your presentation	345
12.7 What did I leave out?	346

13 Illustrations	349
13.1 Your first picture	350
13.2 The building blocks of an illustration	353
13.3 Transformations	358
13.4 Path attributes	360
13.5 Coding the example	363
13.6 What did I leave out?	364
V Customization	365
14 Commands and environments	367
14.1 Custom commands	368
14.1.1 Examples and rules	368
14.1.2 Arguments	374
14.1.3 Short arguments	377
14.1.4 Optional arguments	378
14.1.5 Redefining commands	378
14.1.6 Defining operators	379
14.1.7 Redefining names	380
14.1.8 Showing the definitions of commands	381
14.1.9 Delimited commands	383
14.2 Custom environments	385
14.2.1 Modifying existing environments	385
14.2.2 Arguments	388
14.2.3 Optional arguments with default values	389
14.2.4 Short contents	389
14.2.5 Brand-new environments	390
14.3 A custom command file	390
14.4 The sample article with custom commands	400
14.5 Numbering and measuring	406
14.5.1 Counters	406
14.5.2 Length commands	410
14.6 Custom lists	414
14.6.1 Length commands for the <code>list</code> environment	414
14.6.2 The <code>list</code> environment	416
14.6.3 Two complete examples	419
14.6.4 The <code>trivlist</code> environment	422
14.7 The dangers of customization	422

VI	Long Documents	425
15	BIB_TE_X	427
15.1	The database	429
15.1.1	Entry types	429
15.1.2	Typing fields	432
15.1.3	Articles	434
15.1.4	Books	435
15.1.5	Conference proceedings and collections	436
15.1.6	Theses	439
15.1.7	Technical reports	440
15.1.8	Manuscripts and other entry types	441
15.1.9	Abbreviations	442
15.2	Using BIB _T E _X	443
15.2.1	Sample files	443
15.2.2	Setup	444
15.2.3	Four steps of BIB _T E _X ing	445
15.2.4	BIB _T E _X files	447
15.2.5	BIB _T E _X rules and messages	449
15.2.6	Submitting an article	452
15.3	Concluding comments	452
16	MakeIndex	455
16.1	Preparing the document	455
16.2	Index commands	459
16.3	Processing the index entries	465
16.4	Rules	467
16.5	Multiple indexes	469
16.6	Glossary	470
16.7	Concluding comments	470
17	Books in L_AT_EX	471
17.1	Book document classes	472
17.1.1	Sectioning	472
17.1.2	Division of the body	473
17.1.3	Document class options	474
17.1.4	Title pages	474
17.2	Tables of contents, lists of tables and figures	475
17.2.1	Tables of contents	475
17.2.2	Lists of tables and figures	477
17.2.3	Exercises	478
17.3	Organizing the files for a book	479
17.3.1	The folders and the master document	479

17.3.2	Inclusion and selective inclusion	480
17.3.3	Organizing your files	481
17.4	Logical design	481
17.5	Final preparations for the publisher	484
17.6	If you create the PDF file for your book	486
A	Math symbol tables	491
A.1	Hebrew and Greek letters	491
A.2	Binary relations	493
A.3	Binary operations	496
A.4	Arrows	497
A.5	Miscellaneous symbols	498
A.6	Delimiters	499
A.7	Operators	500
A.7.1	Large operators	501
A.8	Math accents and fonts	502
A.9	Math spacing commands	503
B	Text symbol tables	505
B.1	Some European characters	505
B.2	Text accents	506
B.3	Text font commands	506
B.3.1	Text font family commands	506
B.3.2	Text font size changes	507
B.4	Additional text symbols	508
B.5	Additional text symbols with T1 encoding	509
B.6	Text spacing commands	510
C	Some background	511
C.1	A short history	511
C.1.1	\TeX	511
C.1.2	\LaTeX 2.09 and \AMS-TeX	512
C.1.3	\LaTeX 3	513
C.1.4	More recent developments	514
C.2	How \LaTeX works	515
C.2.1	The layers	515
C.2.2	Typesetting	516
C.2.3	Viewing and printing	517
C.2.4	\LaTeX 's files	518
C.3	Interactive \LaTeX	521
C.4	Separating form and content	522

D	L^AT_EX and the Internet	525
D.1	Obtaining files from the Internet	525
D.2	The T _E X Users Group	528
D.3	Some useful sources of L ^A T _E X information	529
E	PostScript fonts	531
E.1	The Times font and MathTime	532
E.2	Lucida Bright fonts	534
E.3	More PostScript fonts	534
F	L^AT_EX localized	535
G	L^AT_EX on the iPad	539
G.1	The iPad as a computer	540
G.1.1	File system	540
G.1.2	FileApp	541
G.1.3	Printing	543
G.1.4	Text editors	543
G.2	Files	544
G.3	Two L ^A T _E X implementations for the iPad	544
G.3.1	Texpad	544
G.3.2	TeX Writer	550
G.4	Conclusion	551
H	Final thoughts	553
H.1	What was left out?	553
H.1.1	L ^A T _E X omissions	553
H.1.2	T _E X omissions	554
H.2	Further reading	555
	Bibliography	557
	Index	561

Foreword

It was the autumn of 1989—a few weeks before the Berlin wall came down, President George H. W. Bush was president, and the American Mathematical Society decided to outsource T_EX programming to Frank Mittelbach and me.

Why did the AMS outsource T_EX programming to us? This was, after all, a decade before the words “outsourcing” and “off-shore” entered the lexicon. There were many American T_EX experts. Why turn elsewhere?

For a number of years, the AMS tried to port the mathematical typesetting features of AMS-T_EX to L^AT_EX, but they made little progress with the AMSFonts. Frank and I had just published the New Font Selection Scheme for L^AT_EX, which went a long way to satisfy what they wanted to accomplish. So it was logical that the AMS turned to us to add AMSFonts to L^AT_EX. Being young and enthusiastic, we convinced the AMS that the AMS-T_EX commands should be changed to conform to the L^AT_EX standards. Michael Downes was assigned as our AMS contact; his insight was a tremendous help.

We already had L^AT_EX-NFSS, which could be run in two modes: compatible with the old L^AT_EX or enabled with the new font features. We added the reworked AMS-T_EX code to L^AT_EX-NFSS, thus giving birth to AMS-L^AT_EX, released by the AMS at the August 1990 meeting of the International Mathematical Union in Kyoto.

AMS-L^AT_EX was another variant of L^AT_EX. Many installations had several L^AT_EX variants to satisfy the needs of their users: with old and new font changing commands, with and without AMS-L^AT_EX, a single and a multi-language version. We decided to develop a Standard L^AT_EX that would reconcile all the variants. Out of a group of interested people grew what was later called the L^AT_EX3 team—and the L^AT_EX3 project got underway. The team’s first major accomplishment was the release of L^AT_EXe in June 1994. This standard L^AT_EX incorporates all the improvements we wanted back in 1989. It is now very stable and it is uniformly used.

Under the direction of Michael Downes, our AMS-L^AT_EX code was turned into AMS packages that run under L^AT_EX just like other packages. Of course, the L^AT_EX3 team recognizes that these are special; we call them “required packages” because they are part and parcel of a mathematician’s standard toolbox.

Since then a lot has been achieved to make an author’s task easier. A tremendous number of additional packages are available today. The *L^AT_EX Companion*, 2nd edition, describes many of my favorite packages.

George Grätzer got involved with these developments in 1990, when he got his copy of AMS-*L^AT_EX* in Kyoto. The documentation he received explained that AMS-*L^AT_EX* is a *L^AT_EX* variant—read Lamport’s *L^AT_EX* book to get the proper background. AMS-*L^AT_EX* is not AMS-*T_EX* either—read Spivak’s AMS-*T_EX* book to get the proper background. The rest of the document explained in what way AMS-*L^AT_EX* differs from *L^AT_EX* and AMS-*T_EX*. Talk about a steep learning curve . . .

Luckily, George’s frustration working through this nightmare was eased by his lengthy e-mail correspondence with Frank and lots of telephone calls to Michael. Three years of labor turned into his first book on *L^AT_EX*, providing a “simple introduction to AMS-*L^AT_EX*”. This edition is more mature, but preserves what made his first book such a success. Just as in the first book, Part I, *Mission Impossible*, is a short introduction for the beginner. Chapter 1, *Short Course*, dramatically reducing the steep learning curve of a few weeks to a few hours in only 30 pages. Chapter 2, *And a few more things*. . . adds a few more advanced topics useful already at this early stage.

The rest of the book is a detailed presentation of everything you may need to know. George “teaches by example”. You find in this book many illustrations of even the simplest concepts. For articles, he presents the *L^AT_EX* source file and the typeset result. For formulas, he discusses the building blocks with examples, presents a *Formula Gallery*, and a *Visual Guide* for multiline formulas.

Going forth and creating “masterpieces of the typesetting art”—as Donald Knuth put it at the end of the *T_EX*book—requires a fair bit of initiation. This is the book for the *L^AT_EX* beginner as well as for the advanced user. You just start at a different point.

The topics covered include everything you need for mathematical publishing.

- Instructions on creating articles, from the simple to the complex
- Converting an article to a presentation
- Customize *L^AT_EX* to your own needs
- The secrets of writing a book
- Where to turn to get more information

The many examples are complemented by a number of easily recognizable features:

Rules which you must follow

Tips on what to be careful about and how to achieve some specific results

Experiments to show what happens when you make mistakes—sometimes, it can be difficult to understand what went wrong when all you see is an obscure *L^AT_EX* message

This book teaches you how to convert your mathematical masterpieces into typographical ones, giving you a lot of useful advice on the way. How to avoid the traps for the unwary and how to make your editor happy. And hopefully, you'll experience the fascination of doing it right. Using good typography to better express your ideas.

If you want to learn \LaTeX , buy this book and start with the *Short Course*. If you can have only one book on \LaTeX next to your computer, this is the one to have. And if you want to learn about the world of \LaTeX packages as of 2004, also buy a second book, the *\LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition.

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Rainer Schöpf". The script is fluid and cursive, with the first letters of "Rainer" and "Schöpf" being capitalized and prominent.

Rainer Schöpf
 \LaTeX 3 team

Preface to the fifth edition

My book *Practical L^AT_EX* [42] was published last year. Many of the changes in this fifth edition are based on *Practical L^AT_EX* and on my articles “What Is New in L^AT_EX?” in the Notices of the American Mathematical Society [36]–[41] and [43].

Part I. Short Course of the fourth edition was revised under the title *Chapter 1. Short Course*. I renamed *Part I: Mission Impossible*. This part now has a second chapter: *And a few more things ...*. The new Chapter 1 is what you absolutely, unquestionably must know to write your first T_EX document. It’s only 30 pages long, should not take more than a few hours to read and understand. No typing is necessary, the files you need are provided for you, see Section 1.1.2.

The new Chapter 2 adds a few more topics that is helpful to know such as the aux files, what is their role, how to handle them. It deals in some detail with error messages. Finally, it contains Brian Davey’s list of L^AT_EX mistakes most often made by authors.

To create “vector graphics” illustrations (see page 349 for an example), many users switched to Till Tantau’s TikZ package. We introduce TikZ in Chapter 13. We hope that the few commands we discuss are sufficient to get you started.

I carefully revised all the material in this book. One would think that this is not necessary in a fifth edition. But as Fred says, there are infinitely many typos in any book, and even our best efforts remove only finitely many. And so many of the links have changed...

Finally, I should mention that I renamed the awkward *user-defined commands* to *custom commands*. How come I have not thought of this before?

Introduction

Is this book for you?

This book is for the mathematician, physicist, engineer, scientist, linguist, or technical typist who has to learn how to typeset articles containing mathematical formulas or diacritical marks. It teaches you how to use \LaTeX , a typesetting markup language based on Donald E. Knuth's typesetting language \TeX , designed and implemented by Leslie Lamport, and greatly improved under the guidance of AMS.

Part I provides a quick introduction to \LaTeX , from typing examples of text and math to typing your first article such as the sample article on page 4 and creating your first presentation such as the sample presentation—four slides of which you find in Figure 1.5—in a very short time. The rest of the book provides a detailed exposition of \LaTeX .

\LaTeX has a huge collection of rules and commands. While the basics in Part I should serve you well in all your writings, most articles and presentations also require you to look up special topics. Learn Part I well and become passingly familiar with the rest of the book, so when the need arises you know where to turn with your problems.

You can find specific topics in the Short Contents, the detailed Contents, and the Index.

Mathematicians find \LaTeX very strange. A typical article in mathematics deals with a field defined by a few axioms, and the topic of the article needs only a few more. In contrast, \LaTeX has hundreds of axioms. We try to ease the transition by introducing at the start as few commands as possible. For instance, we introduce presentations with only five new commands.

What is document markup?

When you work with a word processor, you see your document on the computer monitor more or less as it looks when printed, with its various fonts, font sizes, font shapes (e.g., roman, italic) and weights (e.g., normal, boldface), interline spacing, indentation, and so on.

Working with a *markup language* is different. You type the *source file* of your article in a *text editor*, in which all characters appear in the same font. To indicate changes in the typeset text, you must add *text markup commands* to the source file. For instance, to emphasize the phrase `detailed description` in a \LaTeX source file, type

```
\emph{detailed description}
```

The `\emph` command is a markup command. The marked-up text yields the typeset output

```
[
detailed description
]
```

In order to typeset math, you need *math markup commands*. As a simple example, consider the formula $\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2} dx$. To mark it up in \LaTeX , type

```
\int \sqrt{\alpha^2 + x^2}\,dx
```

You do not have to worry about determining the size of the integral symbol or how to construct the square root symbol that covers $\alpha^2 + x^2$. \LaTeX does it all for you.

The three layers

The markup language we shall discuss comes in three layers: \TeX , \LaTeX , and the AMS packages, described in detail in Appendix C. Most \LaTeX installations automatically place all three on your computer. You do not have to know what comes from which layer, so we consider the three together and call it \LaTeX .

The three platforms

Most of you run \LaTeX on one of the following three computer types:

- A Windows computer, a computer running Microsoft Windows
- A Mac, a Macintosh computer running OS X
- A computer running a UNIX variant such as Solaris or Linux

The \LaTeX source file and the typeset version both look the same independent of what computer you have. However, the way you type your source file, the way you

typeset it, and the way you look at the typeset version depends on the computer and on the \LaTeX implementation you use.

What's in the book?

Part I is *Mission Impossible*; it helps you to get started quickly with \LaTeX , to type your first articles, to make your first presentations, and it prepares you to tackle \LaTeX in more depth in the subsequent parts.

Chapter 1 is the *Short Course*. You start writing your *first article*—as typeset on page 4—and prepare your *first presentation*—see some of the slides typeset on page 28. This chapter introduces how \LaTeX uses the *keyboard* and how to *type text*. You do not need to learn much to understand the basics. Text markup is quite easy. You also learn math markup, which is not so straightforward. Several sections in this chapter ease you into *mathematical typesetting*. There is a section on the basic building blocks of math formulas. Another one discusses equations. Finally, we present the two simplest multiline formulas, which should cover most of your everyday needs. We also cover the elements of presentations with a simple example.

In **Chapter 2**, we explain how things work, the structure of \LaTeX , the auxiliary files, the logical and visual design of an article, \LaTeX error messages. Finally, we present a long list of dos and don'ts to help you write good \LaTeX .

Part II introduces the two most basic skills for writing with \LaTeX in depth, *typing text* and *typing math*.

Chapters 3 and **4** introduce *text* and *displayed text*. Chapter 3 is especially important because, when you type a \LaTeX document, most of your time is spent typing text. The topics covered include special characters and accents, hyphenation, fonts, and spacing. Chapter 4 covers displayed text, including *lists* and *tables*, and for the mathematician, *proclamations* (theorem-like structures) and *proofs*.

Typing math is the heart of any mathematical typesetting system. **Chapter 5** discusses inline formulas in detail, including basic constructs, delimiters, operators, math accents, and horizontally stretchable lines. The chapter concludes with the *Formula Gallery*.

Math symbols are covered in three sections in **Chapter 6**. How to space them, how to build new ones; we introduce the new set of some 2,000 STIX math symbols. We also look at the closely related subjects of math alphabets and fonts. Then we discuss tagging and grouping equations.

\LaTeX knows a lot about typesetting an inline formula, but not much about how to display a multiline formula. **Chapter 7** presents the numerous tools \LaTeX offers to help you do that. We start with a *Visual Guide* to help you get oriented.

Part III discusses the parts of a \LaTeX document. In **Chapter 8**, you learn about the *structure* of a \LaTeX document. The most important topics are *sectioning* and *cross-referencing*. In **Chapter 9**, we discuss the `amsart document class` for articles. In particular, I present the title page information. Chapter 9 also features `secondarticle.tex`,

a sample article for `amsart`, somewhat more advanced than `firstarticle.tex` typeset on page 4. You can learn a lot about \LaTeX just by reading the source file one paragraph at a time and seeing how that paragraph is typeset. We conclude this chapter with a brief description of the AMS distribution, the packages and document classes, of which `amsart` is a part.

In **Chapter 10** the most commonly used *legacy document classes* are presented, `article`, `report`, and `letter` (the book class is discussed in Chapter 17), along with a description of the standard \LaTeX distribution. Although `article` is not as sophisticated as `amsart`, it is commonly used for articles not meant for publication.

In **Part IV**, we start with **Chapter 11**, discussing PDF files, *hyperlinks*, and the `hyperref` package. This prepares you for *presentations*, which are PDF files with hyperlinks. In **Chapter 12** we utilize the *beamer package* for making \LaTeX presentations and **Chapter 13** introduces its sister package `TikZ` for illustrations.

Part V (Chapter 14) introduces techniques to *customize \LaTeX* : custom commands and environments created by users, and command files. We present a sample command file, `newlattice.sty`, and a version of the second sample article utilizing this command file. You learn how parameters that affect \LaTeX 's behavior are stored in counters and length commands, how to change them, and how to design your own custom lists. A final section discusses the pitfalls of customization.

In **Part VI (Chapters 15 and 16)**, we discuss the special needs of longer documents. Two applications, contained in the standard \LaTeX distribution, `BIBTeX` and `MakeIndex`, make compiling *large bibliographies* and *indexes* much easier.

\LaTeX provides the `book` and the `amsbook` document classes to serve as foundations for well-designed books. We discuss these in **Chapter 17**. Better quality books have to use document classes designed by professionals.

You will probably find yourself referring to **Appendices A and B** time and again. They contain the *math and text symbol tables*. You can also find them in the `samples` file.

Appendix C relates some historical background material on \LaTeX . It gives you some insight into how \LaTeX developed and how it works. **Appendix D** discusses the many ways we can find \LaTeX material on the *Internet*. **Appendix E** is a short introduction to the use of *PostScript fonts* in a \LaTeX document. **Appendix F** briefly describes the use of \LaTeX for languages other than American English.

\LaTeX on an iPad is introduced in **Appendix G**.

Finally, **Appendix H** discusses what we left out, points you towards some areas for further reading, and mentions some recent developments.

Lots of sample files help you save typing examples, see Section 1.1.2. You also get PDF files of *Mission Impossible*, the symbol tables, and the STIX symbols.

Mission statement

This book is a guide for typesetting mathematical documents within the constraints imposed by \LaTeX , an elaborate system with hundreds of rules. \LaTeX allows you to perform almost any mathematical typesetting task through the appropriate application of its rules. You can customize \LaTeX by introducing custom commands and environments and by changing \LaTeX parameters. You can also extend \LaTeX by invoking packages that accomplish special tasks.

It is *not my goal*

- to survey the hundreds of \LaTeX packages you can utilize to enhance \LaTeX
- to teach how to write \TeX code to create your own packages
- to discuss how to design beautiful documents by writing document classes

The definitive book on the first topic, as of 2004, is Frank Mittelbach and Michel Goossens's *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [56] (in collaboration with Johannes Braams, David Carlisle, and Chris Rowley). The second and third topics still await authoritative treatment.

Conventions

To make this book easy to read, I use some simple conventions:

- Explanatory text is set in this typeface: Times.
- Computer Modern typewriter is used to show what you should type, as well as messages from LaTeX. All the characters in this typeface have the same width, making it easy to recognize.
- I also use Computer Modern typewriter to indicate
 - Commands (`\newpage`)
 - Environments (`\align`)
 - Documents (`firstarticle.tex`)
 - Document classes (`amsart`)
 - Document class options (`draft`)
 - Folders or directories (`work`)
 - The names of *packages*—extensions of \LaTeX (`verbatim`)

- When I show you how something looks when typeset, I use Computer Modern, \TeX 's standard typeface:

┌

I think you find this typeface sufficiently different from the other typefaces I have used. The strokes are much lighter so that you should not have much difficulty recognizing typeset \LaTeX material. When the typeset material is a separate paragraph or paragraphs, corner brackets in the margin set it off from the rest of the text—unless it is a displayed formula.

└

- For explanations in the text, such as

Compare `iff` with `iff`, typed as `iff` and `if{f}`, respectively.

the same typefaces are used. Because they are not set off spatially, it may be a little more difficult to see that `iff` is set in Computer Modern roman (in Times, it looks like this: `iff`), whereas `if{f}` is set in the Computer Modern typewriter typeface. Compare: `iff`, `iff`, `iff`, and a larger version: `iff`, `iff`, `iff`.

- I usually introduce commands with examples, such as

`\[22pt]`

However, it is sometimes necessary to define the syntax of a command more formally. For instance,

`\[length]`

where `length`, typeset in Computer Modern typewriter italic font, represents the value you have to supply.

Good luck and have fun.

George Grätzer

E-mail:

`gratzer@me.com`

Home page:

<http://server.maths.umanitoba.ca/homepages/gratzer/>

PART I

Mission Impossible

Short course

It happens to most of us. We live a happy life without \LaTeX and then, all of a sudden, we have to do something urgent that requires it.

If you are a student, maybe your professor turned to you and said “I need the solutions to these exercises typed up and distributed to the class by tomorrow” and the solutions are chock-full of formulas, difficult to do in Word.

Or you are a researcher whose documents have always been typed up by a secretary. You have to attend a conference and give a presentation. Your secretary is on vacation.

In my case, it was a letter (this was before e-mail) from the American Mathematical Society, in which they informed me that my paper, written in Word, was accepted for publication. The AMS will publish the paper in nine months. However, a \LaTeX version would be published in three months! So I had to learn \LaTeX in a hurry.

The mission, should you choose to accept it, is to get started really fast in \LaTeX . Our goal is to produce in \LaTeX the little article printed on the next page.

Relax, this chapter will not self-destruct in five seconds.

**A TECHNICAL RESULT
FOR CONGRUENCES OF FINITE LATTICES**

G. GRÄTZER

ABSTRACT. We present a technical result for congruences on finite lattices.

1. INTRODUCTION

In some recent research, G. Czédli and I, see [1] and [2], spent quite an effort in proving that some equivalence relations on a planar semimodular lattice are congruences. The number of cases we had to consider was dramatically cut by the following result.

Theorem 1. *Let L be a finite lattice. Let δ be an equivalence relation on L with intervals as equivalence classes. Then δ is a congruence relation iff the following condition and its dual hold:*

(C₊) *If x is covered by y , $z \in L$ and $x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$, then $z \equiv y + z \pmod{\delta}$.*

2. THE PROOF

We prove the join-substitution property: if $x \leq y$ and $x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$, then

$$(1) \quad x + z \equiv y + z \pmod{\delta}.$$

Let $U = [x, y + z]$. We induct on length U , the length of U .

Let $I = [y_1, y + z]$ and $J = [z_1, y + z]$. Then length I and length $J < \text{length } U$. Hence, the induction hypothesis applies to I and $\delta \upharpoonright I$, and we obtain that $w \equiv y + w \pmod{\delta}$. By the transitivity of δ , we conclude that

$$(2) \quad z_1 \equiv y + w \pmod{\delta}.$$

Therefore, applying the induction hypothesis to J and $\delta \upharpoonright J$, we conclude (1).

REFERENCES

- [1] G. Czédli, *Patch extensions and trajectory colorings of slim rectangular lattices*. Algebra Universalis **88** (2013), 255–280.
- [2] G. Grätzer, *Congruences of fork extensions of lattices*. Acta Sci. Math. (Szeged), **57** (2014), 417–434.

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, UNIVERSITY OF MANITOBA, WINNIPEG, MB R3T 2N2, CANADA
E-mail address, G. Grätzer: gratzer@me.com
URL, G. Grätzer: <http://tinyurl.com/gratzerhomepage>

Date: March 21, 2015.

2010 Mathematics Subject Classification. Primary: 06B10.

Key words and phrases. finite lattice, congruence.

1.1 Getting started

1.1.1 Your L^AT_EX

Are you sitting in front of your computer that has a L^AT_EX implementation? If you use a UNIX computer, you surely are. If you are in front of a Windows computer or a Mac, point your Internet browser at tug.org. Choose to download MikTeX for a Windows computer and MacTeX for a Mac. Follow the easy instructions (and be patient, these are big downloads) and you are done.

Even better, find a friend who can help.

1.1.2 Sample files

We work with a few sample documents. Download them from the Springer page for this book:

<http://www.springer.com/us/book/9783319237954>

I suggest you create a folder, `samples`, on your computer to store the downloaded sample files, and another folder called `work`, where you will keep your working files. Copy the documents from the `samples` to the `work` folder as needed. *In this book, the `samples` and `work` folders refer to the folders you created.*

One of the sample files is `sample.cls`. Make sure it is in the `work` folder when you typeset a sample document.

1.1.3 Editing cycle

Watch a friend type a document in L^AT_EX and learn the basic steps.

1. A text editor is used to create a L^AT_EX source file. A source file might look like this:

```
\documentclass{amsart}
\begin{document}
Then  $\delta$  is a congruence relation. I can type formulas!
\end{document}
```

Note that the source file is different from a typical word processor file. All characters are displayed in the same font and size.

2. Your friend “typesets” the source file (tells the application to produce a typeset version) and views the result on the monitor:

```
┌
    Then  $\delta$  is a congruence relation. I can type formulas!
└
```

3. The editing cycle continues. Your friend goes back and forth between the source file and the typeset version, making changes and observing the results of these changes.

4. *The file is viewed/printed.* View the typeset version as a pdf file or print it to get a paper version.

If \LaTeX finds a mistake when typesetting the source file, it records this in the *log file*. The *log window* (some call it *console*) displays a shorter version.

Various \LaTeX implementations have different names for the source file, the text editor, the typeset file, the typeset window, the log file, and the log window. Become familiar with these names, so you can follow along with our discussions.

1.1.4 Typing the source file

A source file is made up of *text*, *formulas*, and *instructions (commands)* to \LaTeX .

For instance, consider the following variant of the first sentence of this paragraph:

```
A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,
 $\sqrt{5}$ ), and \emph{instructions to} \la.
```

This typesets as

```
[
A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,  $\sqrt{5}$ ), and instructions to  $\LaTeX$ .
]
```

In this sentence, the first part

```
A source file is made up of text, formulas (e.g.,
```

```
is text. Then
```

```
 $\sqrt{5}$ 
```

```
is a formula
```

```
), and
```

```
is text again. Finally,
```

```
\emph{instructions to} \la.
```

The instruction `\emph` is a *command with an argument*, while the instruction `\LaTeX` is a *command without an argument*. Commands, as a rule, start with a backslash (`\`) and tell \LaTeX to do something special. In this case, the command `\emph` emphasizes its *argument* (the text between the braces). Another kind of instruction to \LaTeX is called an *environment*. For instance, the commands

```
\begin{center}
```

```
\end{center}
```

enclose a `center` environment; the *contents* (the text typed between these two commands) are centered when typeset.

In practice, text, formulas, and instructions (commands) are mixed. For example,

My first integral: `\int \zeta^2(x) \, dx`.

is a mixture of all three; it typesets as

My first integral: $\int \zeta^2(x) dx$.

Creating a document in \LaTeX requires that we type in the source file. So we start with the keyboard, proceed to type a short note, and learn some simple rules for typing text in \LaTeX .

1.2 The keyboard

The following keys are used to type the source file:

a-z A-Z 0-9
+ = * / () []

You can also use the following punctuation marks:

, ; . ? ! : ' ' -

and the space bar, the Tab key, and the Return (or Enter) key.

Finally, there are thirteen special keys that are mostly used in \LaTeX commands:

\$ % & ~ _ ^ \ { } @ " |

If you need to have these characters typeset in your document, there are commands to produce them. For instance, the dollar sign, \$ is typed as `\$`, the underscore, `_`, is typed as `_`, and the percent sign, `%`, is typed as `\%`. Only `@` requires no special command, type `@` to print `@`; see Sections 3.1.2 and B.4.

There are also commands to produce composite characters, such as accented characters, for example `ä`, which is typed as `\"a`. \LaTeX prohibits the use of other keys on your keyboard unless you have special support for it. See the text accent table in Sections 3.4.7 and B.2. If you want to use accented characters in your source file, then you must use the `inputenc` package.



Tip The text accent table looks formidable. Don't even dream of memorizing it. You will need very few. When you need a text accent, look it up. I know only one: `\"a` (LOL). If you use a name with accented characters, figure out once how to type it, and then any time you need it you can just copy and paste (chances are that the name is in your list of references).

1.3 Your first text notes

We start our discussion on how to type a note in \LaTeX with a simple example. Suppose you want to use \LaTeX to produce the following:

It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.

To produce this typeset document, create a new file in your work folder with the name `textnote1.tex`. Type the following, including the spacing and linebreaks shown, but not the line numbers:

```

1  % Sample file: textnote1.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  It is of some concern to me that
6  the terminology used in multi-section
7  math courses is not uniform.
8
9  In several sections of the course on
10 matrix theory, the term
11 ‘‘hamiltonian-reduced’’ is used.
12 I, personally, would rather call these
13 ‘‘hyper-simple’’. I invite others
14 to comment on this problem.
15 \end{document}

```

Alternatively, copy the `textnote1.tex` file from the `samples` folder (see page 5).

The first line of `textnote1.tex` starts with `%`. Such lines are called *comments* and are ignored by \LaTeX . Commenting is very useful. For example, if you want to add some notes to your source file and you do not want those notes to appear in the typeset version of your document, begin those lines with a `%`. You can also comment out part of a line:

simply put, we believe % actually, it’s not so simple

Everything on the line after the `%` character is ignored by \LaTeX .

Line 2 specifies the *document class*, `sample` (the special class we provided for the sample documents), which controls how the document is formatted.

The text of the note is typed within the document environment, that is, between `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}`.

Type the source file, without the line numbers. Save it in your work folder as `textnote2.tex` (`textnote2.tex` can also be found in the `samples` folder):

```

1  % Sample file: textnote2.tex
2  \documentclass{sample}
3
4  \begin{document}
5  \begin{flushright}
6    \today
7  \end{flushright}
8  \textbf{From the desk of George Gr\{a}tzer}
9
10 February 7--21 \emph{please} use my
11 temporary e-mail address:
12 \begin{center}
13   \texttt{George\_Gratzer@yahoo.com}
14 \end{center}
15 \end{document}

```

This note introduces several additional text features of L^AT_EX.

- The `\today` command (in line 6) to display the date on which the document is typeset, so you will see a date different from the date shown above in your own typeset document (see also Section 3.4.8).
- The environments to *right justify* (lines 5–7) and *center* (lines 12–14) text.
- The commands to change the text style, including the `\emph` command (line 10) to *emphasize* text, the `\textbf` command (line 8) for **bold** text (text bold font), and the `\texttt` command (line 13) to produce typewriter style text. These are *commands with arguments*.
- The form of the L^AT_EX commands. As we have noted already, almost all L^AT_EX *commands* start with a backslash (`\`) followed by the *command name*. For instance, `\textbf` is a command and `textbf` is the command name. The command name is terminated by the first *non-alphabetic character*, that is, by any character other than a–z or A–Z.



Tip `textnote2.tex` is a file name but `textbf1` is not a command name. `\textbf1` typesets as **1**. Let's look at this a bit more closely. `\textbf` is a valid command. If a command needs an argument and it is not followed by braces, then it takes the next character as its argument. So `\textbf1` is the command `\textbf` with the argument 1; it typesets as **1**.

- The multiple role of hyphens: Double hyphens are used for number ranges. For example, 7--21 (in line 10) typesets as 7–21. The punctuation mark – is called an *en dash*. Use triple hyphens for the *em dash* punctuation mark—such as the one in this sentence.
- Special rules for special characters (see Section 1.2), for *accented characters*, and for some *European characters*. For instance, the accented character ä is typed as `\"a}`. (But I confess, I always type my name as `Gr\"atzer` without the braces.)

See Section 3.4 for more detail. In Appendix B, all the text symbols are organized into tables. We also have the `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder.



Tip Keep `SymbolTables.pdf` handy on your computer!

1.4 Lines too wide

\LaTeX reads the text in the source file one line at a time and typesets the entire paragraph when the end of a paragraph is reached. Occasionally, \LaTeX gets into trouble when trying to split the paragraph into typeset lines. To illustrate this situation, modify `textnote1.tex`. In the second sentence, replace `term` by `strange term`. Now save this modified file in your `work` folder using the name `textnote1bad.tex` (or copy the file from the `samples` folder).

Typesetting `textnote1bad.tex`, you obtain the following:

┌

It is of some concern to me that the terminology used in multi-section math courses is not uniform.

In several sections of the course on matrix theory, the strange term “hamiltonian-reduced” is used. I, personally, would rather call these “hyper-simple”. I invite others to comment on this problem.

└

The first line of paragraph two is too wide. In the `log` window, \LaTeX displays the following messages:

```
Overfull \hbox (15.38948pt
too wide) in paragraph at lines 9--15 []\OT1/cmr/m/n/10 In sev-eral
sec-tions of the course on ma-trix the-ory, the strange term
‘‘hamiltonian-
```

It informs you that the typeset version of this paragraph has a line that is 15.38948 points too wide. \LaTeX uses *points* (pt) to measure distances; there are about 72 points in 1 inch. Then it identifies the source of the problem: \LaTeX did not properly hyphenate the word `hamiltonian-reduced` because it (automatically) hyphenates a hyphenated word *only at the hyphen*.

What to do, when a line is too long?

 **Tip** Your first line of defense: reword the offending line. Write

The strange term ‘‘hamiltonian-reduced’’ is used in several sections of the course on matrix theory.

and the problem goes away.

Your second line of defense: insert one or more *optional hyphen commands* (`\-`), which tell L^AT_EX where it can hyphenate the word. Write:

```
hamil\ -tonian-reduced
```

1.5 A note with formulas

In addition to the regular text keys and the 13 special keys discussed in Section 1.2, two more keys are used to type formulas: `<` and `>`. The formula $2 < |x| > y$ (typed as `$2 < |x| > y$`) uses both. Note that such a formula, called *inline*, is enclosed by a pair of `$` symbols.

We begin typesetting formulas with the following note:

┌ In first-year calculus, we define intervals such as (u, v) and (u, ∞) . Such an interval is a *neighborhood* of a if a is in the interval. Students should realize that ∞ is only a symbol, not a number. This is important since we soon introduce concepts such as $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x)$.

When we introduce the derivative

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},$$

└ we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

To create the source file for this mixed text and formula note, create a new document with your text editor. Name it `formulanote.tex`, place it in the `work` folder, and type the following, without the line numbers (or simply copy `formulanote.tex` from the `samples` folder):

```
1 % Sample file: formulanote.tex
2 \documentclass{sample}
3
4 \begin{document}
5 In first-year calculus, we define intervals such
6 as  $(u, v)$  and  $(u, \infty)$ . Such an interval
7 is a neighborhood of  $a$ 
```

```

8   if  $a$  is in the interval. Students should
9   realize that  $\infty$  is only a
10  symbol, not a number. This is important since
11  we soon introduce concepts
12  such as  $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x)$ .
13
14  When we introduce the derivative
15  \[
16  \lim_{x \to a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a},
17  \]
18  we assume that the function is defined and
19  continuous in a neighborhood of  $a$ .
20  \end{document}

```

This note introduces several basic concepts of formulas in \LaTeX .

- There are two kinds of math formulas and environments in `formulanote.tex`:
 - *Inline* formulas; they open and close with `$` or open with `\(` and close with `\)`.
 - *Displayed* math environments; they open with `\[` and close with `\]`. (We will introduce many other displayed math environments in Section 1.7 and Chapter 7.)
- \LaTeX uses its own spacing rules within math environments, and completely ignores the white spaces you type, with two exceptions:
 - Spaces that terminate commands. So in `∞a` the space is not ignored; `∞a` produces an error.
 - Spaces in the arguments of commands that temporarily revert to regular text. `\text` is such a command; see Sections 1.6 and 5.4.6.

The white space that you add when typing formulas is important only for the readability of the source file.

- A math symbol is invoked by a command. For example, the command for ∞ is `\infty` and the command for \rightarrow is `\to`. The math symbols are organized into tables in Appendix A; see also `SymbolTables.pdf` in the `samples` folder.
- Some commands, such as `\sqrt`, need *arguments* enclosed by `{` and `}`. To typeset $\sqrt{5}$, type `$\sqrt{5}$` , where `\sqrt` is the command and 5 is the argument. Some commands need more than one argument. To get

$$\frac{3+x}{5}$$

type

```
\[
  \frac{3+x}{5}
\]
```

where `\frac` is the command, `3+x` and `5` are the arguments.

- There is no blank line before a displayed formula!

 **Tip** Keep in mind that many spaces equal one space in text, whereas your spacing is ignored in formulas, unless the space terminates a command.

1.6 The building blocks of a formula

A formula (inline or displayed) is built from components. We group them as follows:

- Arithmetic
- Binomial coefficients
- Congruences
- Delimiters
- Ellipses
- Integrals
- Math accents
- Matrices
- Operators
- Roots
- Text

In this section, I describe each of these groups, and provide examples illustrating their use. Read carefully the groups you need!

Arithmetic We type the arithmetic operations $a + b$, $a - b$, $-a$, a/b , and ab in the natural way: `$a + b$`, `$a - b$`, `$-a$`, `a / b`, and `$a b$` (the spaces are typed only for readability).

If you wish to use \cdot or \times for multiplication, as in $a \cdot b$ or $a \times b$, use `\cdot` or `\times`, respectively. The formulas $a \cdot b$ and $a \times b$ are typed as `$a \cdot b$` and `$a \times b$`.

Displayed fractions, such as

$$\frac{1 + 2x}{x + y + xy}$$

are typed with `\frac`:

```
\[
  \frac{1 + 2x}{x + y + xy}
\]
```

Subscripts and superscripts Subscripts are typed with `_` and superscripts with `^` (caret). Subscripts and superscripts should be enclosed in braces, that is, typed between `{` and `}`. To get a_1 , type `a_{1}`. Omitting the braces in this example causes no harm, but to get a_{10} , you *must* type `a_{10}`. Indeed, `a_10` is typeset as a_10 .

There is one symbol, the prime (`'`), that is automatically superscripted in a formula. To get $f'(x)$, just type `$f'(x)$`. (On many keyboards, the symbol on the key looks like this: ```)

See Section 5.4.1 for more detail.

Binomial coefficients Binomial coefficients are typeset with the `\binom` command. `\binom{a}{b + c}` is here inline: $\binom{a}{b+c}$, whereas

$$\binom{a}{b+c}$$

is the displayed version.

See Section 5.4.2 for more detail.

Congruences The two most important forms are

$$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta} \quad \text{typed as} \quad \$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta}$$$

$$a \equiv v (\theta) \quad \text{typed as} \quad \$a \equiv v \pmod{\theta}$$$

See Section 5.6.2 for more detail.

Delimiters Parentheses and square brackets are examples of delimiters. They are used to delimit some subformulas, as in `$[(a*b)+(c*d)]^2$`, which typesets as $[(a * b) + (c * d)]^2$. L^AT_EX can be instructed to expand them vertically to enclose a formula such as

$$\left(\frac{1+x}{2+y^2}\right)^2$$

which is typed as

```
\[
  \left(\frac{1 + x}{2 + y^2}\right)^2
\]
```

The `\left(` and `\right)` commands tell L^AT_EX to size the parentheses correctly, relative to the size of the formula inside the parentheses; sometimes the result is pleasing, sometimes not.

We dedicate Section 5.5 to this topic.

Ellipses In a formula, the ellipsis is printed either as *low* (or *on-the-line*) dots:

$F(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is typed as `$F(x_{1}, \dots, x_{n})$`

or as *centered* dots:

$x_1 + \dots + x_n$ is typed as

`$x_{1} + \dots + x_{n}$`

Use `\cdots` and `\ldots` if `\dots` does not work as expected.

See Section 5.4.3 for more detail.

Integrals The command for an integral is `\int`. The lower limit is specified as a subscript and the upper limit is specified as a superscript. For example, the formula $\int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$ is typed as

`$\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2$`

where `\,` is a spacing command.

The formula looks bad without the spacing command: $\int_0^\pi \sin x dx = 2$.

See Section 5.4.4 for more complicated integrals.

Math accents The four most frequently used math accents are:

\bar{a} typed as `\bar{a}` \hat{a} typed as `\hat{a}`

\tilde{a} typed as `\tilde{a}` \vec{a} typed as `\vec{a}`

See Section 5.7 for more detail. See Sections 5.7 and A.8 for complete lists.

Matrices You type the matrix

$$\begin{matrix} a + b + c & uv & x - y & 27 \\ a + b & u + v & z & 134 \end{matrix}$$

with the `\matrix` command

```
\[
\begin{matrix}
a + b + c & uv & x - y & 27 \\
a + b & u + v & z & 134 \end{matrix}
\]
```

The `matrix` environment separates adjacent matrix elements within a row with ampersands. Rows are *separated* by new line commands, `\\`.

 **Tip** Do not end the last row with a new line command.

The `matrix` environment has to appear within a formula, as a rule, in a displayed formula. It can be used in the `align` environment discussed in Sections 1.7.3 and 7.5.

The `matrix` environment does not provide delimiters. Several variants do, including `pmatrix` and `vmatrix`. For example,

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a + b + c & uv \\ a + b & u + v \end{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 30 & 7 \\ 3 & 17 \end{vmatrix}$$

is typed as follows:

```
\[
  \mathbf{A} =
  \begin{pmatrix}
    a + b + c & uv \\
    a + b & u + v
  \end{pmatrix}
  \begin{vmatrix}
    30 & 7 \\
    3 & 17
  \end{vmatrix}
\]
```

As you can see, `pmatrix` typesets as a matrix between a pair of `\left(` and `\right)` commands, while `vmatrix` typesets as a matrix between a pair of `\left|` and `\right|` commands. There is also `bmatrix` for square brackets.

See Section 7.7.1 for a listing of all the matrix variants and Sections 5.5 and A.6 for lists of delimiters.

Operators To typeset the sine function, $\sin x$, type `\sin x`. Note that `\sin x` would be typeset as *sinx*—how awful. \LaTeX calls `\sin` an *operator*. Sections 5.6 and A.7 list a number of operators. Some are just like `\sin`. Others produce a more complex display, for example,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} f(x) = 0$$

is typed as

```
\[
  \lim_{x \to 0} f(x) = 0
\]
```

See Section 5.6 for more detail.

Large operators The command for *sum* is `\sum` and for *product* is `\prod`. The following two examples:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 \quad \prod_{i=1}^n x_i^2$$

are typed as

```
\[
  \sum_{i=1}^n x_{i}^2 \ \ \ \ \ \prod_{i=1}^n x_{i}^2
\]
```

Sum and product are examples of *large operators*. They are typeset larger in displayed math than in an inline formula. They are listed in Sections 5.6.3 and A.7.1. See Section 5.6.3 for more detail.

Roots `\sqrt` produces a square root. `\sqrt{a + 2b}` typesets as $\sqrt{a + 2b}$. The n -th root, $\sqrt[n]{5}$, requires the use of an *optional argument*, which is specified in brackets: `\sqrt[n]{5}`. See Section 5.4.5.

Text You can include text in a formula with a `\text` command. For instance,

$$a = b, \quad \text{by assumption},$$

is typed as

```
\[
  a = b, \ \text{\quad by assumption},
\]
```

where `\quad` is a spacing command.

See Section 5.4.6 for more detail.

1.7 Displayed formulas

1.7.1 Equations

The `equation` environment creates a displayed formula and automatically generates an equation number. The equation

$$(1) \quad \int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}\label{E:firstIntegral}
  \int_0^{\pi} \sin x \, dx = 2
\end{equation}
```

The equation number, which is automatically generated, depends on how many numbered displayed formulas occur before the given equation. You can choose to have equations numbered within each section—(1.1), (1.2), ..., in Section 1; (2.1), (2.2), ..., in Section 2; and so on—by including, in the preamble (see Sections 1.8 and 5.3), the command

```
\numberwithin{equation}{section}
```

You can choose to have the equation numbers on the right; see the `reqno` option of the `amsart` document class in Section 10.1.2.

The `equation*` environment is the same as the displayed formula opened with `\[` and closed with `\]` we discussed in Section 1.5. Sometimes you may want to use `equation*` for the ease of deleting the `*`-s if you wish.

1.7.2 Symbolic referencing

To reference a formula without having to remember a number—which can change when you edit your document—give the equation a symbolic label by using the `\label` command and refer to the equation in your document by using the symbolic label, the argument of the `\label` command. In this example, I have called the first equation `firstIntegral`, and used the convention that the label of an equation starts with `E:`, so that the complete `\label` command is `\label{E:firstIntegral}`.

The number of this formula is referenced with the `\ref` command. Its page is referenced using the `\pageref` command. For example, to get

[see (1) on page 18.
]

type (see Sections 1.3 and Section 3.4.3 for `~`)

```
see~(\ref{E:firstIntegral}) on page~\pageref{E:firstIntegral}.
```

The `\eqref` command provides the reference number in parentheses. So the last example could be typed

```
see~\eqref{E:firstIntegral} on page~\pageref{E:firstIntegral}.
```

The `\eqref` command is smart. Even if the equation number is referenced in emphasized or italicized text, the reference typesets upright (in roman type).

The main advantage of this cross-referencing system is that when you add, delete, or rearrange equations, \LaTeX automatically renumbers the equations and adjusts the

references that appear in your typeset document. For bibliographic references, L^AT_EX uses the `\bibitem` command to define a bibliographic item and the `\cite` command to cite it.

 **Tip** For renumbering to work, you have to typeset **twice**.

 **Tip** It is a good idea to check the L^AT_EX warnings periodically in the log file. If you forget to typeset the source file twice when necessary, L^AT_EX issues a warning.

What happens if you misspell a reference, e.g., typing `\ref{E:FirstIntegral}` instead of `\ref{E:firstIntegral}`? L^AT_EX typesets `??`. There are two warnings in the log file:

```
LaTeX Warning: Reference 'E:FirstIntegral' on page 39
                undefined on input line 475.
```

for the typeset page and the other one close to the end:

```
LaTeX Warning: There were undefined references.
```

If the argument of `\cite` is misspelled, you get `[?]` and similar warnings.

Check the **Tip** on page 70.

Absolute referencing

Equations can also be *tagged* by attaching a name to the formula with the `\tag` command. The tag replaces the equation number.

For example,

(Int)
$$\int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2$$

is typed as

```
\begin{equation}
  \int_0^\pi \sin x \, dx = 2 \tag{Int}
\end{equation}
```

Tags are *absolute*. This equation is *always* referred to as (Int). Equation numbers, on the other hand, are *relative*, they may change when the file is edited.

1.7.3 Aligned formulas

L^AT_EX has many ways to typeset multiline formulas. We discuss three constructs in this section: *simple alignment*, *annotated alignment*, and *cases*. For more constructs, see Chapter 7.

For simple and annotated alignment we use the `align` environment. Each line in the `align` environment is a separate equation, which L^AT_EX automatically numbers.

Simple alignment

Simple alignment is used to align two or more formulas. To obtain the formulas

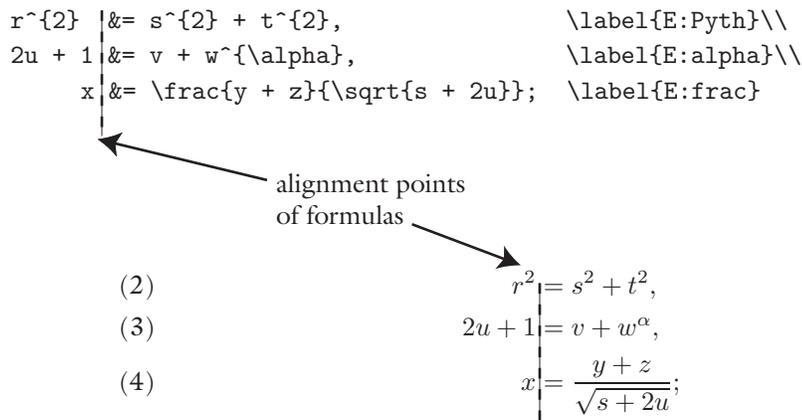
$$\begin{aligned} (2) \quad & r^2 = s^2 + t^2, \\ (3) \quad & 2u + 1 = v + w^\alpha. \end{aligned}$$

type the following, using `\` as the *line separator* and `&` as the *alignment point*:

```
\begin{align}
r^{2} & \&= s^{2} + t^{2}, & \quad \backslash\label{E:Pyth}\backslash\% \backslash\eqref{E:Pyth} \\
2u + 1 & \&= v + w^{\alpha}. & \quad \backslash\label{E:alpha}\backslash\% \backslash\eqref{E:alpha} \\
\end{align}
```

Figure 1.1 may help visualize the placements of the ampersands.

 **Tip** In this displayed formula, `\` is a *line separator*, not a new line command. Do not place a `\` to terminate the last line!



```
r^{2} |&= s^{2} + t^{2}, & \quad \backslash\label{E:Pyth}\backslash\% \backslash\eqref{E:Pyth} \\
2u + 1 |&= v + w^{\alpha}, & \quad \backslash\label{E:alpha}\backslash\% \backslash\eqref{E:alpha} \\
x |&= \frac{y + z}{\sqrt{s + 2u}}; & \quad \backslash\label{E:frac}
```

$$\begin{aligned} (2) \quad & r^2 = s^2 + t^2, \\ (3) \quad & 2u + 1 = v + w^\alpha, \\ (4) \quad & x = \frac{y + z}{\sqrt{s + 2u}}; \end{aligned}$$

Figure 1.1: Simple alignment: source and typeset.

These formulas are numbered (2) and (3) because they are preceded by one numbered equation earlier in this section.

The `align` environment can also be used to break a long formula into two or more parts. Since numbering both lines in such a case would be undesirable, you can prevent the numbering of the second line by using the `\notag` command in the second part of the formula. For example,

$$(4) \quad h(x) = \int \left(\frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) dx$$

$$= \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} dx - 2 \tan^{-1}(x - 2)$$

is typed as follows:

```
\begin{align}
h(x) &= \int \left( \frac{f(x) + g(x)}{1 + f^2(x)} \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{1 + f(x)g(x)}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} \right) dx \label{E:longInt} \\
&= \int \frac{1 + f(x)}{1 + g(x)} dx \\
&\quad - 2 \tan^{-1}(x-2) \notag
\end{align}
```

The rules for simple alignment are easy to remember.

Rule ■ Simple alignments

- Use the `align` environment.
 - *Separate* the lines with `\\`.
 - In each line, indicate the alignment point with `&`, one `&` per line. If the alignment point is adjacent to an `=`, `+`, and so on, place the `&` *before* to ensure proper spacing.
 - Place a `\notag` command in each line that you do not wish numbered.
 - If no line should be numbered, use the `align*` environment.
 - Place a `\label` command in each numbered line you can want to reference with `\ref`, `\eqref`, or `\pageref`.
-

Annotated alignment

Annotated alignment allows you to align formulas and their annotations, that is, explanatory text, separately:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (5) \quad & x = x \wedge (y \vee z) && \text{(by distributivity)} \\
 & = (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z) && \text{(by condition (M))} \\
 & = y \vee z
 \end{aligned}$$

This is typed as

```

\begin{align}
x &= x \wedge (y \vee z)
&&\text{\text{(by distributivity)}}\label{E:Align}\% \eqref{E:Align} \\
&= (x \wedge y) \vee (x \wedge z)
&&\text{\text{(by condition (M))}} \notag \\
&= y \vee z \notag
\end{align}

```

Figure 1.2 may help visualize the placements of the ampersands.

Rule ■ Annotated alignment

The rules for annotated alignment are similar to the rules of simple alignment. In each line, in addition to the alignment point marked by `&`, there is also a mark for the start of the annotation: `&&`.

1.7.4 Cases

The `cases` construct is a specialized matrix. It has to appear within a math environment such as the `equation` environment or the `align` environment. Here is a typical example:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x^2, & \text{if } x < 0; \\ \alpha + x, & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1; \\ x^2, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

It is typed as follows:

```

\[
f(x)=
\begin{cases}
-x^{2}, & \text{\text{if } \$x < 0\$;}} \\
\alpha + x, & \text{\text{if } \$0 \leq x \leq 1\$;}}
\end{cases}

```

```

      x^{2},          &\text{otherwise.}
\end{cases}
\]

```

The rules for using the `cases` environment are the same as for matrices. Separate the lines with `\\` and indicate the annotation with `&`.

1.8 The anatomy of a document

To begin, we use the sample document `firstarticle.tex` (in the `samples` folder) to examine the anatomy of an document.

Every `LaTeX` document has two parts, the preamble and the body. The *preamble* of a document is everything from the first line of the source file down to the line

```
\begin{document}
```

The *body* is the contents of the document environment. For a schematic view of a document, see Figure 1.3.

The preamble contains instructions affecting the entire document. The *only* required command in the preamble is the `\documentclass` command. There are other commands (such as the `\usepackage` commands, see Section 8.2) that must be placed in the preamble if they are used, but such commands do not have to be present in every document.

Here is the preamble and top matter of `firstarticle`:

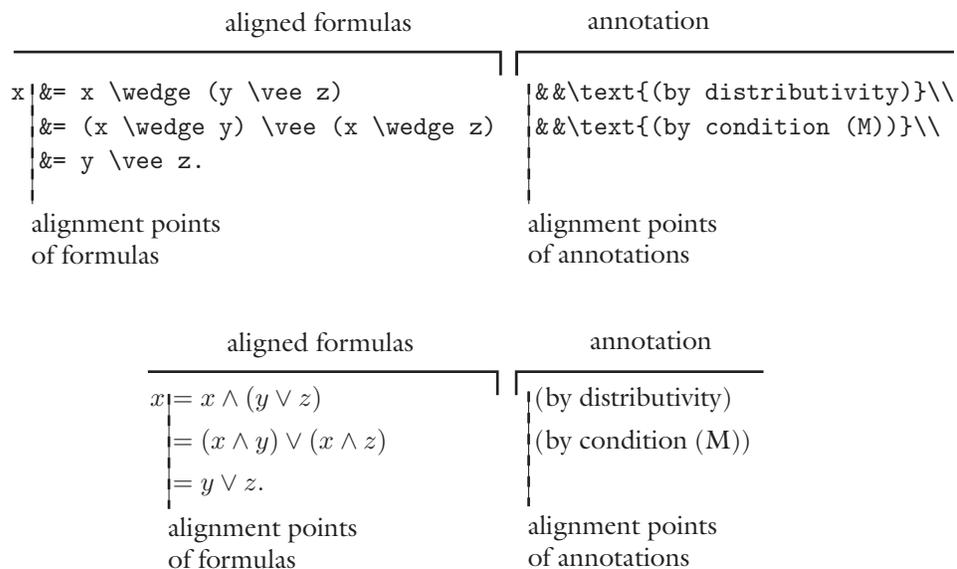


Figure 1.2: Annotated alignment: source and typeset.

```

%First document, firstarticle.tex
\documentclass{amsart}
\usepackage{amssymb,latexsym}

\newtheorem{theorem}{Theorem}

\begin{document}
\title{A technical result\ for congruences of finite lattices}
\author{G. Gr"atzer}
\address{Department of Mathematics\
  University of Manitoba\
  Winnipeg, MB R3T 2N2\
  Canada}
\email[G. Gr"atzer]{gratzer@me.com}
\urladdr[G. Gr"atzer]{http://tinyurl.com/gratzerhomepage}
\date{March 21, 2015}

```

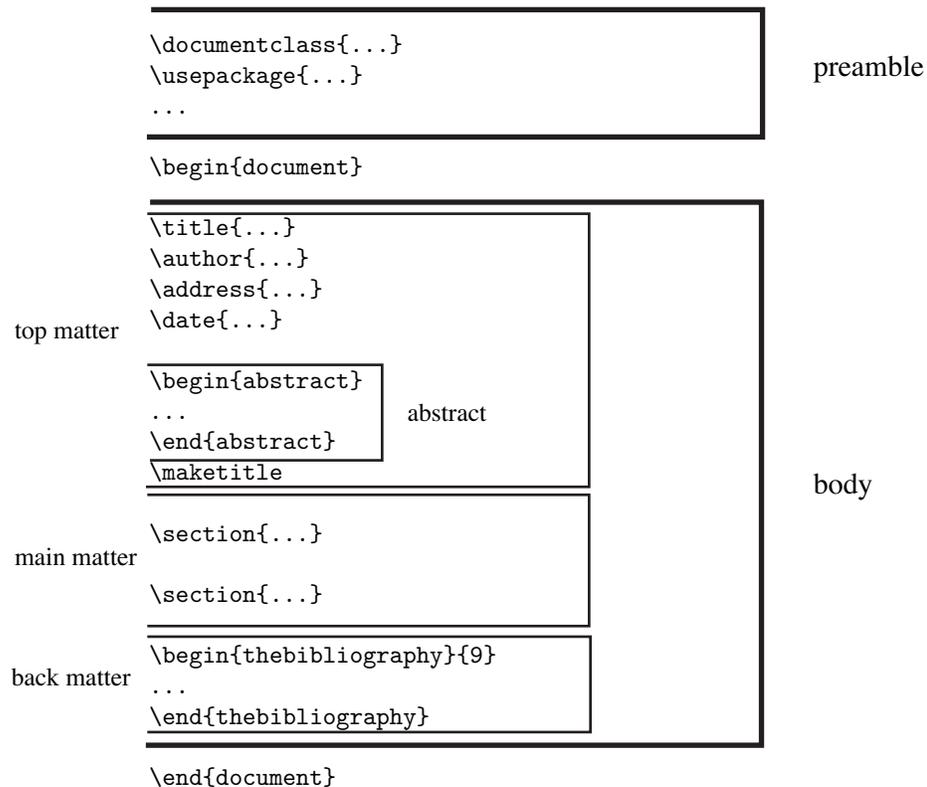


Figure 1.3: A schematic view of a document.

```

\subjclass[2010]{Primary: 06B10.}
\keywords{finite lattice, congruence.}
\maketitle

\begin{abstract}
We present a technical result for congruences on finite lattices.
\end{abstract}

```

You find the source file, `firstarticle.tex`, in the `samples` folder and the typeset document on page 4.

To simplify the discussion in Part I, we discuss only one document class for articles: `amsart`. You may come across its predecessor, `article`, which handles a limited set of commands for the preamble and the top matter and displays them differently. We shall discuss in detail the `amsart` document class in Chapter 9. For the `article` document class, see Section 10.1.

1.9 Your own commands

Over time, \LaTeX can be adjusted to fit your needs. You add packages to enable \LaTeX to do new things (such as the `graphicx` package, see Sections 1.10 and 8.4.3) and introduce your own commands to facilitate typing and make the source file more readable.

We can add two new commands to the sample article `firstarticle.tex`:

```

\newcommand{\pdelta}{\pmod{\delta}}
\DeclareMathOperator{\length}{length}

```

So instead of

```
$x \equiv y \pmod{\delta}$+
```

we can type

```
$x \equiv y \pdelta$
```

and instead of `length\`, `U`, we can type `$\length U$` (see Section 14.1.6). Notice how the spacing is now done by \LaTeX !

We'll dedicate Chapter 14 to customizing \LaTeX .

1.10 Adding an illustration

“And what is the use of a book,” thought Alice, “without pictures or conversations?” I am not sure what to suggest about conversations, but illustrations we can tackle with ease. Let us add an illustration, `covers.pdf` to `firstarticle`. First, add

```
\usepackage{graphicx}
```

as the fourth line of the document, to the preamble. This will enable L^AT_EX to tackle illustrations. Secondly, add the following lines to `firstarticle.tex`, say, as the second paragraph of the introduction:

```
\begin{figure}[hbt]
{\centering\includegraphics{covers}}
\caption{Theorem~\ref{T:technical} illustrated}\label{F:Theorem}
\end{figure}
```

We place the illustration `covers.pdf` in the same folder as `firstarticle.tex`. That's it. You find `covers.pdf` and `firstarticleill.tex` in the `samples` folder.

 **Tip** Make sure that the `\label` command follows the `\caption` command! You may have hard to explain troubles otherwise.

See Section 8.4.3 for more information.

Most people in my field used the vector graphics application Adobe Illustrator to produce the PDF files for illustrations. Quite recently, it became prohibitively expensive. Luckily, many reasonably priced alternatives are available. In Chapter 13, we discuss an alternative, TikZ, built for L^AT_EX. Inkspace is an alternative, available for all platforms.

1.11 The anatomy of a presentation

Chances are, one of your first exposures to L^AT_EX was watching a *presentation*. The presenter used a pdf document produced by L^AT_EX and opened it with Adobe Reader. He went from “slide” to “slide” by pressing the space bar. Figures 1.4 and Figure 1.5 show four slides of a presentation.

In L^AT_EX, you use a presentation package—really, a document class—to prepare the PDF file. We use Till Tantau's BEAMER.

Here are the first few lines—the preamble and the Title slide—of the source file of our sample presentation, `firstpresentation.tex` (see `firstpresentation.tex` in the `samples` folder, along with `Louisville.tex`, the full presentation):

```
\documentclass[leqno]{beamer}
\usetheme{Warsaw}

\DeclareMathOperator{\Princ}{Princ}

\begin{document}
\title{The order of principal congruences}
\author{G. Gr\"atzer}
\date{}
\maketitle
```

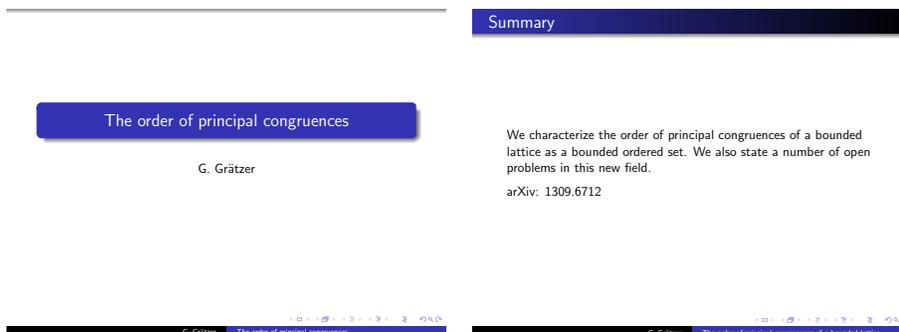


Figure 1.4: The Title slide (Slide 1) and Slide 2

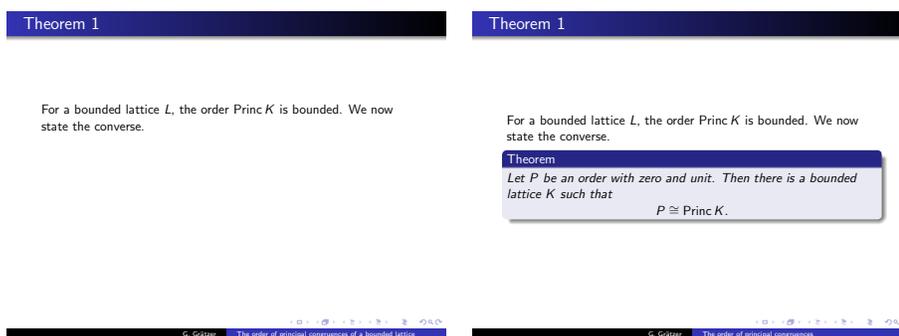


Figure 1.5: Slides 3 and 4

`\usetheme{Warsaw}` provides a flavor. It is followed by the Title slide, providing the title and the author.

The `\title` command may be longer, it may contain all the additional information you may want to display. Here is the `\title` command of `Louisville.tex`:

```
\title[The order of principal congruences of a bounded lattice]
{The order of principal congruences\\
of a bounded lattice.\\
AMS Fall Southeastern Sectional Meeting\\
University of Louisville, Louisville, KY\\
October 5-6, 2013}
```

Note that the `\title` has two parts. The first, in `[],` is the short title, repeated in the bottom line on every slide. The second, in `{},` is the title for the front page.

The rest of the presentation source file is divided into two *frames* with the structure:

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{}
\end{frame}
```

Each frame produces a “slide” (or more). Here is the first frame:

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Summary}
We characterize the order of principal congruences
of a bounded lattice
as a bounded ordered set.
We~also state a number of open problems in this new field.
\medskip

arXiv: 1309.6712
\end{frame}
```

The command `\frametitle` gives the slide its title: Summary, see Slide 2 in Figure 1.4. In the body of the frame, you type regular L^AT_EX.

To produce Slides 3 and 4, it would be natural to try

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice  $L$ , the order  $\Princ K$  is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\end{frame}
```

```
\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice  $L$ , the order  $\Princ K$  is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\begin{theorem}
Let  $P$  be an order with zero and unit.
Then there is a bounded lattice  $K$  such that
\[
P \cong \Princ K.
\]
If  $P$  is finite, we can construct  $K$  as a finite lattice.
\end{theorem}
\end{frame}
```

which produces the two frames of Figure 1.6.

This is really jarring to watch. The two lines of the new Slide 3 jump up more than two lines as they transition to Slide 4.

Here is how we produce Slides 3 and 4 of Figure 1.5:

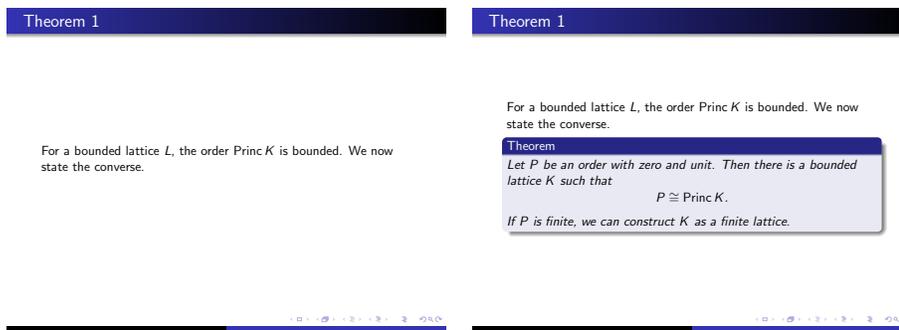


Figure 1.6: Slides 3 and 4, first try

```

\begin{frame}
\frametitle{Theorem 1}
For a bounded lattice  $L$ , the order  $\Princ K$  is bounded.
We now state the converse.
\pause
\begin{theorem}
Let  $P$  be an order with zero and unit.
Then there is a bounded lattice  $K$  such that
\[
P \cong \Princ K.
\]
If  $P$  is finite, we can construct  $K$  as a finite lattice.
\end{theorem}
\end{frame}
\end{document}

```

There is only one new command to learn: `\pause`; it produces from this frame **two** slides.

The `\pause` in this frame splits the contents of the frame into two parts. The first slide is typeset from the first part as if the second part was also present. The second slide is typeset from both parts. So the transition from the first slide to the second is smooth, see Figure 1.5.

You can have more than one `\pause` in a frame. Use `\pause` also to display a list one item at a time.

Chapter 12 discusses BEAMER in more detail.

And a few more things...

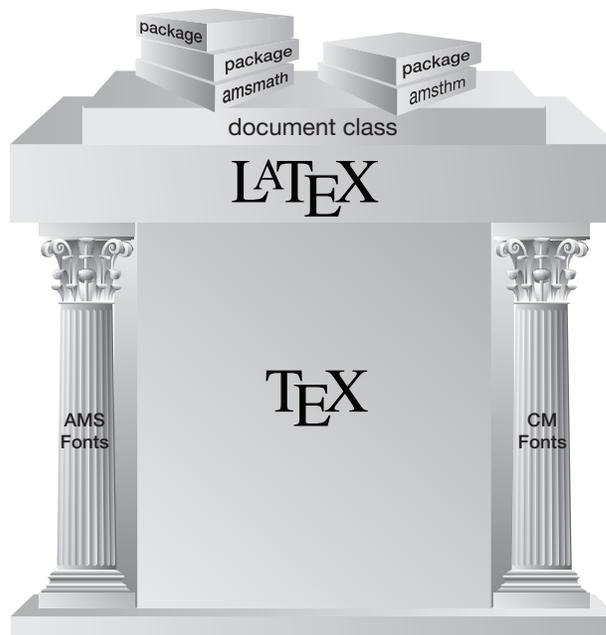
If life was perfect, we would not need this chapter. You would write perfect \LaTeX , based on Chapter 1, no need to study how \LaTeX works, what error messages mean... But life is not perfect, you will make mistakes, \LaTeX will send messages, plain and mysterious.

In this chapter, we briefly explain how things work, the structure of \LaTeX , the auxiliary files, the logical and visual design of an article, \LaTeX error messages. See Appendix C for more detail. Finally, we present a long list of dos and don't to help you write good \LaTeX .

2.1 *Structure*

\LaTeX 's core is a programming language called \TeX , created by Donald E. Knuth, which provides low-level typesetting instructions. \TeX comes with a set of fonts called *Computer Modern* (CM). The CM fonts and the \TeX programming language form the foundation of a typical \TeX system. \TeX is extensible—new commands can be defined in terms of more basic ones. \LaTeX is one of the best known extensions of \TeX .

The visual layout of a \LaTeX document is primarily determined by the *document class*, such as `amsart`, `article` for articles, `amsbook`, `book` for books. Many journals,

Figure 2.1: The structure of \LaTeX .

publishers, and schools have their own document classes for formatting articles, books, and theses.

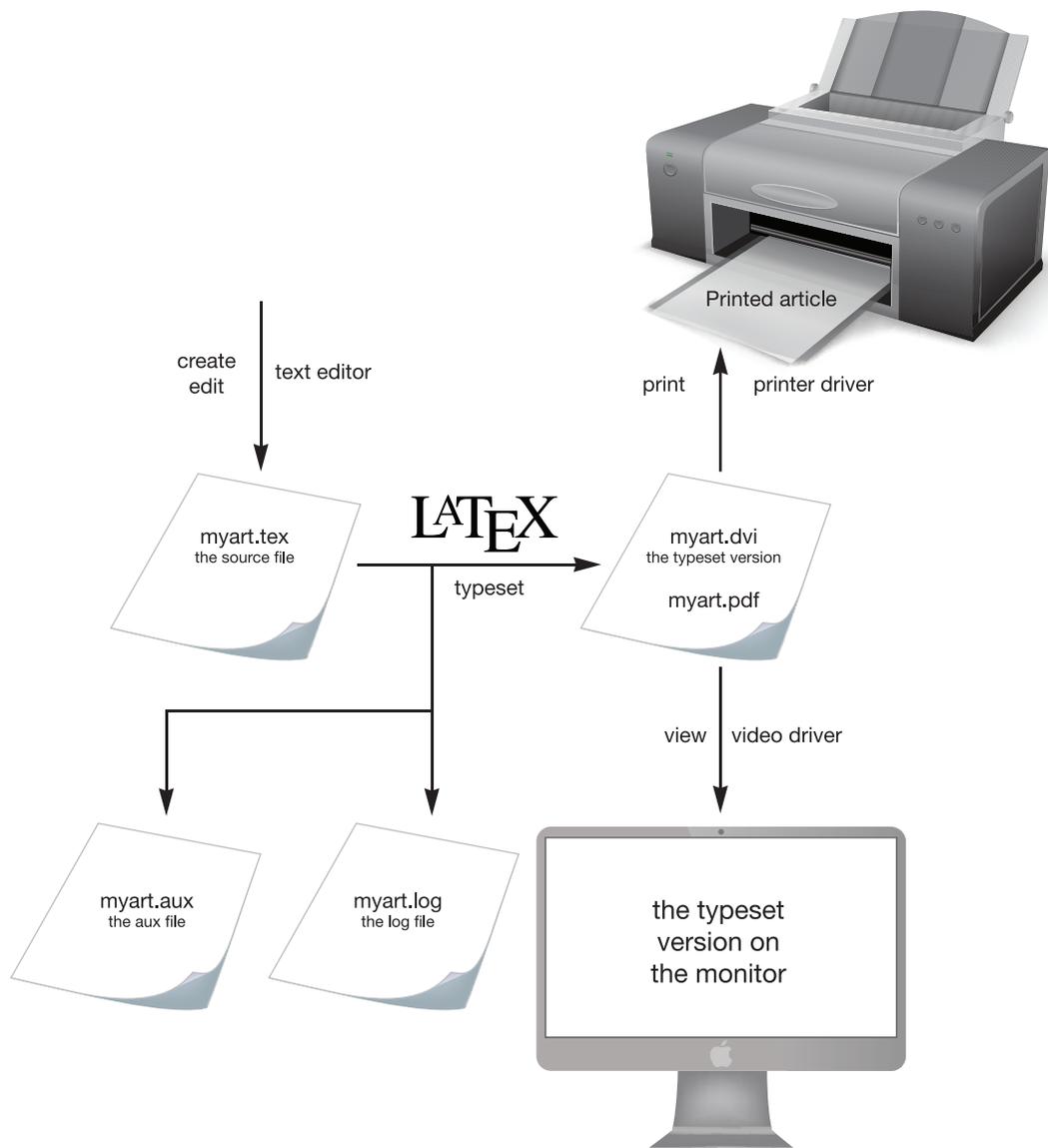
Extensions of \LaTeX are called *packages*. They provide additional functionality by adding new commands and environments, or by changing the way previously defined commands and environments work. It is essential that you find the packages that make your work easier. *The \LaTeX Companion*, 2nd edition [56] discusses a large number of the most useful packages as of 2004.

The structure of \LaTeX is illustrated in Figure 2.1. This figure suggests that in order to work with a \LaTeX document, you first have to install \TeX and the CM fonts, then \LaTeX , and finally specify the document class and the necessary packages. The packages must include `amsmath`, `amsthm`, and so on. Of course, your \LaTeX installation already includes all of these.

2.2 *Auxiliary files*

Figure 2.2 illustrates the steps in the production of a typeset document.

You start by opening an existing \LaTeX source file or creating a new one with a text editor. For this discussion, the source file is called `myart.tex`. Once the source file is ready, you typeset it. Depending on the document class options you choose and the packages the document loads, you end up with at least three additional files:

Figure 2.2: Using L^AT_EX.

1. `myart.pdf` The typeset article in PDF format.
2. `myart.aux` The auxiliary file, used by \LaTeX for internal bookkeeping, including cross-references and bibliographic citations.
3. `myart.log` The log file. \LaTeX records the typesetting session in the log file, including any warnings and messages that appear on your monitor in the log window.

Your computer uses a *video driver* to display the typeset article on your monitor and a *printer driver* to print the typeset article on a printer. The video and printer drivers are computer and \LaTeX implementation dependent.

It should be emphasized that of the three applications used, only one is the same for all computers and all implementations.

\LaTeX always uses the aux file from the last typesetting. Here is an example. Your article has Theorems 1 (with `\label{T:first}`) and 2 (with `\label{T:main}`). The aux file has the two lines:

```
\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}}
\newlabel{T:main}{{2}{1}}
```

`\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}}` means that the label `T:first` is assigned the value 1 and appears on page 1. `\newlabel{T:main}{{2}{1}}` means that the label `T:main` is assigned the value 2 and appears on page 1. So the reference

```
see Theorems \ref{T:first} and \ref{T:main}.
```

is typeset as

```
[ see Theorems 1 and 2.
```

Now add a new theorem between Theorems 1 and 2. Typeset the article. In the typeset article, the three theorems are properly numbered, but it still contains the same typeset line:

```
[ see Theorems 1 and 2.
```

The aux file has the lines:

```
\newlabel{T:first}{{1}{1}}
\newlabel{T:main}{{3}{1}}
```

So at the next typesetting, the reference is displayed as

```
[ see Theorems 1 and 3.
```

2.3 Logical and visual design

The typeset version of `firstarticle.tex` looks impressive on p. 4. To produce such articles, you need to understand that there are two aspects of article design: *visual* and *logical*.

As an example, let us look at a theorem from `firstarticle.tex` (see the typeset form of the theorem on page 4). You tell L^AT_EX that you want to state a theorem by using a theorem environment:

```
\begin{theorem}\label{T:technical}
Let  $L$  be a finite lattice.

...
\end{theorem}
```

The logical part of the design is choosing to define a theorem by placing material inside a `theorem` environment. For the visual design, L^AT_EX makes hundreds of decisions. Could you have specified all of the spacing, font size changes, centering, numbering, and so on? Maybe, but would you *want* to? And would you want to repeat that process for every theorem in your document?

Even if you did, you would have spent a great deal of time and energy on the *visual design* of the theorem rather than on the *logical design* of your article. The idea behind L^AT_EX is that you should concentrate on what you have to say and let L^AT_EX take care of the visual design.

This approach allows you to easily alter the visual design by changing the document class (or its options, see Sections 9.5, 10.1.2, and 17.1). Section 9.1 provides some examples. If you code the visual design into the article—hard coding it, as a programmer would say—such changes are much harder to accomplish, for you and for the journal publishing the article.

For more on this topic, see Section C.4.

2.4 General error messages

Now that you are ready to type your first document, we give you some pointers on using L^AT_EX.

You will probably make a number of mistakes in your first document. These mistakes fall into the following categories:

1. Typographical errors, which L^AT_EX blindly typesets.
2. Errors in formulas or in the formatting of the text.
3. Errors in your instructions to L^AT_EX, that is, in commands and environments.

Typographical errors can be corrected by viewing and spell checking the source file, finding the errors, and then editing the typeset file. Mistakes in the second and

third categories may trigger errors during the typesetting process, such as lines too wide of Section 1.4.

We now look at some examples of the third class of errors by deliberately introducing a number of mistakes into `firstarticle.tex` and examining the messages.

Experiment 1. In `firstarticle.tex`, go to line 19 (use the `Go to Line` command of your editor) and remove the closing brace so that it reads `\begin{abstract`

When you typeset `firstarticle.tex`, L^AT_EX reports a problem:

```
{abstract We present a technical result for congruences on\ETC.
./firstarticle.tex:23:
Paragraph ended before \begin was complete.
<to be read again>
                \par
```

1.23

Line 23 of the file is the line after `\maketitle`. The message informs you that the environment name was not completed.

Runaway argument? is a message that comes up often. It means that the argument of a command is either longer than expected or it contains material the argument cannot accept. Most often a closing brace solves the problem, as in this experiment.

Experiment 2. Now restore line 19, then go to line 21 and change `\end{abstract}` to `\end{abstrac}` and typeset again. L^AT_EX informs you of another error:

```
./firstarticle.tex:21: LaTeX Error: \begin{abstract}
on input line 19 ended by \end{abstrac}.
```

See the LaTeX manual or LaTeX Companion for explanation.

Type `H <return>` for immediate help.

...

```
1.21 \end{abstrac}
```

This is perfect. L^AT_EX correctly analyzes the problem and tells you where to make the change.

Experiment 3. Correct the error in line 21, and introduce a new error in line 61. This line reads

```
z_1 \equiv y+ w \pmod{\delta}.
```

Change `\delta` to `\deta`. Now, when you typeset the document, L^AT_EX reports

```
./firstarticle.tex:61: Undefined control sequence.
<argument> {\operator@font mod}\mkern 6mu\deta
```

```
1.61 z_1 \equiv y+ w \pmod{\deta}
```

This mistake is easy to identify: `\deta` is a misspelling of `\delta`.

Experiment 4. In line 38, delete the closing brace of the `\label` command. This results in a message:

```
Runaway definition?
->E:cover\text {If $x$ is covered by $y,z \in L$ and\ETC.
! File ended while scanning definition of \df@label.
<inserted text>
      }
<*> firstarticle.tex
```

Undo the change to line 38.

Experiment 5. Add a blank line following line 61:

$$x + z = z + z_1 \equiv z + (y + w) = y + z \pmod{\delta},$$

This change results in the message

```
./firstarticle.tex:62: Missing $ inserted.
<inserted text>
      $
1.62
```

There can be no blank lines within a displayed math environment. \LaTeX catches the mistake, but the message itself is misleading.

Experiment 6. Add a `$` before `\pmod` in line 61 (such an error often occurs when cutting and pasting a formula). You get the message:

```
./firstarticle.tex:61: Display math should end with $$ .
<to be read again>
      \penalty
1.61 z_1 \equiv y + w $\pmod{\delta}
```

Maybe this could be more to the point?

 **Tip** \LaTeX 's messages are not very useful with displayed formulas. Comment out some of the lines to try to localize the problem.

 **Tip** Typeset often.

Typesetting my book *First Steps into \LaTeX* with the closing brace of the first `\caption` command on line 480 of the source file missing, I get the error message

```
! Text line contains an invalid character.
1.1227 ...pletely irreducible^^?
```

where the reference is to line 1227, about 700 lines removed from the actual error. However, if the only thing I did before typesetting was to insert that figure with its incorrect caption command, at least I would know where to look for errors. If you make a dozen changes and then typeset, you may not know where to start.

2.5 Errors in math

Even in such a simple note there are opportunities for errors. To help familiarize yourself with some of the most commonly seen \LaTeX errors in formulas, we introduce mistakes into `formulanote.tex`.

Experiment 1 In line 6 of `formulanote.tex`, delete the third `$` symbol; save the file under the name `formulanotebad1.tex` in the work folder.

Typeset `formulanotebad1.tex`. \LaTeX generates the following message:

```
! Missing $ inserted.
<inserted text>
      $
1.6 as $(u, v)$ and (u, \infty
                          )$. Such an interval
```

\LaTeX reads `(u, \infty)` as text; but the `\infty` command instructs \LaTeX to typeset a math symbol, which can only be done in a formula. So \LaTeX offers to put a `$` in front of `\infty` while typesetting the source file—it does not put the `$` in the source file itself. \LaTeX attempts a cure, but in this example it comes too late, because the formula *should* start just before `(u`.

Experiment 2 In line 16 of `formulanote.tex`, delete the second `}` symbol and save it under the name `formulanotebad2.tex` in the work folder. This introduces an error: the closing brace of the subscript (see page 15) is missing. Now typeset the note. You get the message

```
Missing } inserted.
<inserted text>
      }
1.12 such as $\lim_{x \to \infty} f(x)$
```

\LaTeX reports that a closing brace (`}`) is missing, but it is not sure where the brace should be. \LaTeX noticed that a subscript started with `{`, but it reached the end of the formula before finding a closing brace `}`. To remedy this, you must look in the formula for an opening brace `{` that is not balanced, and insert the missing closing brace `}`. Make the necessary change and typeset again to view the difference.

Experiment 3 In `mathnote.tex`, delete the two `$` signs in line 19, that is, replace `a` by `a`. Typeset the file. It typesets with no errors. Here is the last line of the typeset file you get:

⌈
 ⌋ we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

instead of

⌈
 ⌋ we assume that the function is defined and continuous in a neighborhood of a .

This is probably the error most often made by beginners. There is no message by \LaTeX and the typeset version looks good. Notice the difference in the shape of the letter a in the two cases. You need sharp eyes to catch such an error.

 **Tip** After an error is corrected, \LaTeX can refuse to typeset your document. If your document is `document.tex`, look in the same folder for the *auxiliary file* `document.aux` that was created by \LaTeX . Delete `document.aux` and **typeset twice**. See Section 2.2.

2.6 Your errors: Davey's Dos and Don'ts

Based on his many years of experience correcting \LaTeX articles for the journal *Algebra Universalis*, Brian Davey collected the \LaTeX mistakes most often made by authors. Here are some items from his list, divided into three categories.

Commands

1. Place ALL custom commands and environments in the preamble!
 If you have trouble with custom commands, then you know where to find them.
2. Don't use `\def`; rather use `\newcommand` or `\renewcommand`.
`\def` is a \TeX command. It is like `\newcommand` (see Sections 1.9 and 14.1), but it can redefine an existing command. Redefining your own commands is bad enough, redefining a \TeX command can be a disaster.
3. Do not simply type the name of an operator into a formula. Declare the appropriate operator; see Sections 1.9 and 14.1.
 For instance, do not type `$length I$`; it typesets as $lengthI$. It should be $length I$, typed as `$$\length I$`. Of course, you have to add

```
\DeclareMathOperator{\length}{length}
```

to the preamble (see Section 1.8).

4. When you send a document to a coauthor or submit an article to a journal, remove all the custom commands not used.

This is a real time saver for your coauthor and editor.

Text

1. Do not produce a list with horizontal and vertical spacing commands. Use a list environment; see Sections 3.8 and 4.2.
2. Do not type numbers for citations and internal references. Use `\cite{...}` for citations and `\ref{...}` for references. For references to equations, use `\eqref`; see Sections 1.7.1 and 5.3.
3. Do not number proclamations (see Section 4.4). Use the standard `amsart` environments for theorems, and so on, and let \LaTeX number them.
4. When writing a document for a journal requiring a document class file, **do not**
 - (a) change any of the size parameters: for instance, do not use options like `12pt` to change the font size or the `\setlength` command to change any parameter of the page size;
 - (b) insert vertical white space via `\bigskip`, `\smallskip`, `\vskip`, `\vspace`, etc, nor via your own custom commands. Do not adjust horizontal space without a very good reason.

So if you want to display some text:

┌

└

Please, display this text.

don't do this:

```
\medskip
\hspace*{6pt} Please, display this text.
\medskip
```

but rather

```
\begin{itemize}
\item[] Please, display this text.
\end{itemize}
```

or

```
\begin{quote}
Please, display this text.
\end{quote}
```

5. Do not leave a blank line before `\end{proof}` or before a text environment (see Section 4.1).
6. Do not use the `geometry` package.

Formulas

1. Do not leave a blank line before a displayed formula.
2. Don't use the symbol `|` in a set description, use the binary relation `\mid`; see Section 5.5.4.
For instance, `\{ x | x^2 < 2 \}` typesets as $\{x|x^2 < 2\}$. The correct form is `\{x \mid x^2 < 2\}`, typed as `$$\{x \mid x^2 < 2\}`.
3. Don't put punctuation marks inside an inline math environment.
For instance, `\sin x.` typed as `$$\sin x.$`; use `$$\sin x$`. This typesets as $\sin x.$ Notice the smaller space between "sin x." and "typed" and the wider space between "`$$\sin x$`." and "This"; see Sections 1.3 and 3.2.2.
4. Don't use two or more displayed formulas one after another. Use an appropriate environment such as `\align`, `\alignat`, `\gather`, and so on (see Section 7.1.1).
5. Don't use `\left\{`, `\right\}`, `\left(`, `\right)`, and so on, by default (see page 15 and Section 5.5.1 for the commands `\left` and `\right`). Even when `\left` and `\right` do not change the size of the symbol, they add extra space after the closing delimiter.
6. Use `\colon` for functions. For instance, `$$f(x) \colon x \to x^2$` typesets as $f(x) : x \rightarrow x^2$. If you type `$$f(x) : x \to x^2$`, you get $f(x) : x \rightarrow x^2$; the spacing is bad.
7. Use `\[` and `\]` (or `equation*`) to type a displayed math environment (see Section 1.7) rather than the old TeX `$$` matched by `$$`. While display math produced via the latter does work properly most of the time, there are some L^AT_EX commands that do not; for example, `\qedhere`.
8. Do not use the `center` environment to display formulas.
9. Use `\dots` first and let L^AT_EX make the decision whether to use `\dots` or `\cdots`; see page 16 and Section 5.4.3. If L^AT_EX gets it wrong, then use `\cdots` or `\ldots`.
10. If you can, avoid constructs (for instance, $\overset{\text{up}}{\rightarrow}$) in inline formulas that disrupt the regular line spacing. Although L^AT_EX automatically leaves room for it, it does not look good, as a rule.

Index

Italic numbers indicate figures or tables, *bold* numbers indicate definitions.

- \ (backslash), 149, 508
 - key, 7, 60
 - starts commands, 6, 10, **52**
 - text symbol, 60, 64, 499
- _ (space), 9, 47, **48**
 - and `\verb*` command, 132
 - in arguments of commands, 69
 - in `\bibitem` labels, 256
 - in `\cite` commands, 256
 - in command names, 52
 - in `tabular` environments, 119
 - text symbol, 509
- _ (space com.), 9, **50**, 54, 86, 174, 510
- ! (exclamation mark), 7, 46
 - float control, **251**, 488
 - in `\index` commands, 459, 460, 463
- ¡ (exclamation mark, Spanish), 64, 505, 508
- \! (negthinspace), 166, **174**, 174, 503, 510
- \" (¨ dieresis/umlaut text accent), 7, 11, 63, 506, 536
- " (double quote), 7, **59**
 - in `BIBTeX` database fields, 451, 452
 - in `\index` commands, 463
 - key, 7, 47, 59
- "ck (European character), 536
- "s (eszett), 536
- #
 - in custom commands, 375, 383
 - key, 7, 47
- \# (# octothorp), 61, 64, 508
- \$
 - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 55, 58, **136**
 - act as braces, 136
 - must be balanced, 137
 - in error messages, 37, 38, 131, 137, 138, 140, 221
 - key, 7, 47
- \\$ (\$ dollar sign), 7, 61, 64, 508
- \$\$
 - in error messages, 37
 - `TEX` displayed math delimiter, 41, 136
- %
 - as comment character, 8, 45, **68–70**, 125, 282, 464
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 70, 449
 - key, 7, 47
- \% (% percent), 7, 45, 61, 64, 70, 508
 - in e-mail addresses, 268
- &
 - as alignment point, 21, 22, 204, 205, 207, 208
 - as column separator, 17, 119, 207, 208, 220, 224
 - key, 7, 47
- \& (& ampersand), 61, 64, 508
- ' (right single quote), 7, 9, 46, **59**, 509
 - for primes (′), 15, 142, 182
- \' (´ acute text accent), 63, 506
- \((start inline math mode), 13, 58
 - acts as special brace, 136, 137
 - must be balanced, 137
- (
 - as math delimiter ((), 149, 499
 - in index entries, 460
 - key, 7, 46

- \) (end inline math mode), 13, 58
 - acts as special brace, 136, 137
 - must be balanced, 137
-)
 - as math delimiter (), 149, 499
 - in index entries, 460
 - key, 7, 46
- * (* asterisk), 60
 - interactive prompt, 97, 381–383, 521
 - key, 7, 47
- ** prompt, 521
- *-form
 - of commands, 53, 82, 85, 87, 89, 113, 114, 132, 182, 183, 231, 241, 310, 377, 380, 387, 389, 445, 473, 475
 - of environments, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 219, 249
- + key, 7, 47
- + (plus), 14, 47, 141, 172, 175, 176, 201, 204, 205
 - as binary operation, 496
 - and subformulas, 204
 - in `multiline` environments, 201
- \, (thinspace), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510
- , (comma), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 76
 - in `\bibitem` commands, 256
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 430, 431, 450
 - use in formulas, 139
- (dash, hyphen, minus), 7, 14, 47, 59, 141, 172, 175, 176, 183, 204, 205
 - as binary operation, 496
 - in `\hyphenation` commands, 66
- \- (opt. hyphen), 12, 66, 66, 80
- (– number ranges, en dash), 11, 59, 64, 508
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 433
- (— em dash), 11, 59, 64, 508
- > `TikZ` `rightarrow` com., 361–363
- . (period), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 76
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 432
- \. overdot text accent (˙), 63, 506
- \/ (italic correction), 76–77, 510
 - and font commands, 77
- / (slash)
 - as divisor, 14, 47, 141
 - as math delimiter (/), 149, 499
 - key, 7
- \: (medspace spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
- : (colon), 7, 46
 - as binary relation, 41, 47, 175, 493
- \; (thickspace), 174, 503, 510
- ; (semicolon), 7, 46
- < (less than)
 - as binary relation (<), 493
 - key, 12, 47
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- <- `TikZ` `leftarrow` com., 361–363
- \=
 - macron text accent (ˉ), 63, 506
 - tab set command, 125
- = (equal sign)
 - as binary relation (=), 493
 - in `BIBTeX` database fields, 430
 - key, 7, 47
- \> (tabbing com.), 125, 126
- > (greater than)
 - as binary relation (>), 493
 - key, 12, 47
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- ?
 - prompt, 521
 - question mark, 7, 46
- ¿ (Spanish question mark), 64, 505, 508
- @ (@ at sign), 7, 47, 61
 - in `BIBTeX` database (`bib`) files, 430
 - in `\index` commands, 461, 462
- @-expression, 119
- ∅. (blank math symbol for comm. diagrams), 229
- \@. (intersentence space), 50, 510
- @<< (stretchable left arrow math sym.), 228
- @= (stretchable equals sign math sym.), 229
- @>> (stretchable right arrow math sym.), 228
- @AAA (stretchable up arrow math sym.), 229
- @VVV (stretchable down arrow math sym.), 229
- @\vert (stretchable double vertical line), 229
- \[(start displayed math mode), 13, 19, 41, 136, 139
 - acts as special brace, 136, 140
- [
 - and optional arguments, 18, 53, 54, 112, 116, 119
 - key, 7, 46
 - math delimiter ([), 149, 499
 - with `\item` commands, 106
 - with `\newcommand`, 374
- \] (end displayed math mode), 13, 19, 41, 136, 139
 - acts as special brace, 136, 140
-]
 - and optional arguments, 18, 53, 54, 112, 116, 119
 - key, 7, 46
 - math delimiter (]), 149, 499
 - with `\item` commands, 106
 - with `\newcommand`, 374

- {
 - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **53**, 54, 142, 370, 517
 - for scoping, 55–57
 - in `BIBTEX` entries, 430, 433
 - key, 7, 47
 - must be balanced, 36, 38, 56, 61
 - in `\index` commands, 468
 - with `\def`, 383
- \{
 - as math delimiter (`{`), 41, 149, 499
 - text brace (`{`), 61, 64, 508
- }
 - for required arguments, 6, 10, 13, **53**, 54, 142, 370, 517
 - for scoping, 55–57
 - in `BIBTEX` entries, 430, 433
 - key, 7, 47
 - must be balanced, 36, 38, 56, 61
 - in `\index` commands, 468
 - with `\def`, 383
- \}
 - as math delimiter (`}`), 41, 149, 499
 - text brace (`}`), 61, 64, 508
- ^ (caret)
 - for superscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 165
 - key, 7, 47, 61
- \^ circumflex text accent (`^`), 63, 64, 506, 508
- _ (`_` underscore), 7, 61, 64, 508
 - in e-mail addresses, 267
- _ (underscore)
 - for subscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 159, 165
 - key, 7, 47
- ‘ (left single quote), 7, 9, 46, **59**, 509
- \` (``` grave text accent), 46, 63, 506
- \| (`|` math delimiter), 148, 149, 150, 169, 499
- | (`|` vertical line), 7, 12, 47, 60, 150, 173
 - as binary relation, 172, 173
 - as math delimiter, 41, 149, 152, 173, 175, 499
 - in `\index` commands, 460, 463
 - in `\tabular` environments, 119
- ~ (tilde)
 - key, 7, 9, 47
 - tie/unbreakable space, **9**, 47, 50, 59, **60**, 83, 510
 - absorbs spaces, 60
 - in `BIBTEX` databases, 433
 - with cross-references, 246
- \~ (`~` tilde text accent), 61, 63, 506, 509
- 9pt (doc. class option), **285**
- 10pt (doc. class option), **88**, **285**, **294**
- 11pt (doc. class option), **285**, **294**
- 12pt (doc. class option), **77**, **285**, **294**
- \\ (new line), **81**, **83**
 - and `\kill` commands, 126
 - breaking lines with, 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345
 - in arguments of commands, **83**
 - in environments, **83**, 108, 129
 - in text, 83
 - optional argument of, **81**, 82, **83**, 231
- * (new line), **82**, 231
- a4paper (doc. class opt.), 286, 294
- a5paper (doc. class opt.), 294
- \AA (`\AA`), 64, 505
- \aa (`\aa`), 64, 505
- abbreviations
 - in bibliographic entries, 442
 - defining, 442
 - periods in, 49–51
 - using small caps for, 75, 482
 - using ties (`~`) with, 50
- above (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- Abrahams, Paul W., 555, 557
- absolute
 - names for equations, 20
 - referencing, 20, 103, 190, **246–247**
 - units, 11, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 95, 296, 411
- abstract (text env.), 25, 52, **239**, 274
 - in `beamer` document class, 314
 - in `report` document class, 291
 - placement of, 239, 274
- abstract (bibl. com.), 431
- \abstractname (redef. name), 380
- abstracts, 25, **239**, 314
 - in AMS document classes, 274
 - in `report` document class, 291
 - separate page for, 237, 287
- accents
 - European, 11, **63**, 63, 509
 - hyphenation of words with, 66
 - in bibliographies, 433
 - in `hyperref` titles, 309
 - math, **16**, **157–158**, 167, 168, 289, 382, 485
 - double, **157**
 - text, 7, 11, 53, **63**, 63, 506, 509
- accents (pack.), 158
- acronyms, using small caps for, 75, 482
- acute (`´` acute text accent), 63, 506
- \acute (`\acute` math accent), 158, 502
- \addcontentsline (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 478
 - arguments of, 475, 478

- adding lines
 - to lists of figures and tables, 478
 - to tables of contents, 475–476, 489
- addition, 14, 47, 141
- `\address` (top matter com.), 284, 314
 - in letters, 297
 - optional arguments of, 266, 267
 - rules for using, 266–267
 - with multiple authors, 270
- address (BIB_TE_X database field), 430, 431
- addresses
 - in letters, 297
 - of authors in articles, 266, 270, 284
- `\addtocontents` (table of contents com.)
 - and lists of figures and tables, 478
 - arguments of, 476, 478
- `\addtocounter` (counter incr. com.), 409
- `\addtolength` (counter setting com.), 412
- adjusted
 - columns, 198, **220–230**
 - formulas, 198, **220–230**
 - flush left and right, 202
- adjusting
 - interline spacing, **79**, 82–83
 - placement of root with `\sqrt`, 145
- Adobe
 - Acrobat Professional, 306, 309, 313, 485
 - placing hyperlinks in documents, 307
 - Illustrator, 27, 349, 364
 - PostScript (PS), *see* PS
 - Reader, 27, 309, 313, 346, 488
- Adobe Systems, 305–307, 557
- `\AE` Aesc (Æ), 64, 505
- `\ae` aesc (æ), 64, 505
- `\afterpage` (delay com.), 300
- `afterpage` (pack.), 300
- afterwords, of books, 473
- `\aleph` (ℵ Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- `\alert` (beamer text style com.), 325
- `align` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- `align` (math align. env.), 21–23, 41, 196, 197, 198, **207–211**, 218, 219, 485, 514
 - annotated, 197
 - page breaks in, 230
- `align*` (math align. env.), 22, 209, 214
- `alignat` (math align. env.), 41, 196, 198, **211–213**
 - argument of, 213
- aligned
 - formulas, **21–23**, 195–198, 207–213, 218, 220, 230, 286, 514
 - text in, 213–215
 - math environments, 230
 - `align`, 21–23, 41, 196, 198, **207–211**, 218, 219, 230
 - `alignat`, 41, 196, 198, **211–213**
 - and `\verb` commands, 132
 - `eqnarray`, 209–210
 - `flalign`, 196, 198, **209**, 219
 - inserting lines of text in, 213
 - intercolumn space in, 195
 - subsidiary math environments, 215–220
 - `aligned`, 198, 215–217
 - `alignedat`, 215–217, 227
 - `split`, 196, 198, **217–220**, 286
 - `aligned` (subsidiary math align. env.), 198, 215–217
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231
 - `alignedat` (subsidiary math align. env.), 215–217, 227
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231
- alignment
 - of columns in tabular environments, 119, 120, 301
 - of formulas, *see also under* adjusted, 207–220
 - annotated, 24, 197
 - commands for, 202
 - flush left and right, 195
 - multiline, 21–24, **205**, **207**
 - simple, 21, 21–23
 - of large symbols, 217
 - of text, 51, 90, **108**, 118, 215, 414
 - centering, 6, 10, 41, 108, **108**, 118, 120, 215, 315, 422
 - command declarations for, **108**, 120
 - flush left, 10, 108
 - flush right, 10, 90, 108
 - with `trivlist` environments, 422
 - of text boxes, vertical, 95, 96
 - point for subformulas (&), 21, 22, 24, 204, 205, 208
 - within text boxes, 92, 95
- `allowdisplaybreaks` (display break com.), **230**
 - and subsidiary math environments, 231
 - optional argument of, 231
- `alltt` (disp. text env.), 143, 299
- `alltt` (pack.), 131, 299, 520
- `\Alph` (uppercase letter counter style com.), 408
- `\alph` (lowercase letter counter style com.), 408
- `\alpha` (α Greek char.), 147, 492
- alpha (BIB_TE_X style), 434
- alphabets (counter styles), 408
- alphabets, math, *183*, **182–183**
 - blackboard bold, 165, **184**, 396, 502
 - calligraphic, 169, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 - Euler Fraktur, 164, 166, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 - Euler Script, **289**, 290, 396, 502
 - Greek, 184
 - symbol, **184–186**

- alphanumeric keys, 7
- `\amalg` (II math op.), 496
- ampersand (&)
 - as alignment point
 - for annotations, 23, 24
 - for subformulas, 21, 22, 204, 205, 208
 - as column separator, 17, 119, 207, 208
 - text symbol, 61, 64, 508
- AMS (American Mathematical Society), xxvii, 515, 531
- AMSFonTS, *see* AMSFonTS
- article templates, 282–285
- bibliographies
 - database files, 443
 - fields, 431
 - sample files, 443, **443–444**
 - styles, **256, 427, 427, 432, 443–444**
- distribution, 261, **288–290**, 385, 442, 443, 511
- document classes, *see* document classes
- environments, *see* displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, *and* text environments
- subject classifications, 269
- technical support provided by, 529
- top matter
 - AMS specific information, 269–270
 - article information, 263–265
 - author information, 265–269
 - commands, **263–274**, 284
 - examples of, 271–274
 - rules for, 265–269
 - with multiple authors, 270–271
 - Web site, 269, 529
- `\AmS` ($\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ logo com.), 63
- AMS package distribution, 261, **288–290**, 313, 385, 424, 442, 443, 511
- $\mathcal{A}\mathcal{M}\mathcal{S}$ - \LaTeX , 513, 514
 - history of, 511–515
 - version 1.0, 514
 - version 1.1, 514
 - two-letter font commands, **79**
 - version 1.2, 514
 - version 2.0, 514
- AMS- \TeX , **512**, 514
 - history of, 511–515
- `amsalpha` (BIB \TeX style), 434
- `amsart` (doc. class), 31, 40, 65, 108, 137, 177, 237–239, 242, **261–290**, 471, 474, 516, 522
 - anatomy of, 24
 - and numbered lists, 102
 - front matter of, 274
 - sample article, 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 263, **274–278**, 282, 376, 382, 388, **400–449**, 522
 - top matter of, 239
- `amsart.tpl` (sample file), 282
- `amsbook` (doc. class), xxx, 31, 241, 381, 471, **472–474**, 516
 - for exercises, 478
- `amsbsy` (pack.), 289, 290
- `amscd` (pack.), 228–230, 289
- AMSFonTS, 288, **289–290**
 - document class options for, 288
 - PostScript versions of, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
 - technical support for, 529
 - updates to, 520
- `amsfonts` (pack.), **289–290**
 - options, 289
- `amsgen` (pack.), 289, 290
- `amslatex` (\LaTeX distr. directory), 299, 300, 528
- `amsmath` (pack.), 32, 220, **288**, 289, 290, 411, 514, 520
 - document class options affecting, 286–287
 - options, 287
- `amsmath.sty` (AMS distr. file), 392
- `amsidx` (pack.), 290
- `\AMSname` (`hyperref` redef. name), 311
- `amsopn` (pack.), 289, 290
- `amspain` (BIB \TeX style), 427, 443, 445
- `amspain.bst` (BIB \TeX style file), **427, 427, 432, 443, 445, 452**
- `amsproc` (doc. class), 263, 381, 516
- `amsproc.template` (AMS sample template file), 285
- `amsrefs`, 452
 - creating typeset bibliography, 453
- `amssymb` (pack.), 164, 282, 288, 289, 379
- `amstext` (pack.), 289, 290
- `amsthm` (pack.), 32, 290
- `amsxtra` (pack.), 157, 158, 288, 289
- `\And` (& math op.), 496
- `\and`, top matter command, 292, 294
- `and`, in bibliographies, 432
- `\angle` (\angle math sym.), 498
- annotations
 - alignment of, 23, 24
 - of formulas, 212
- `apalike` (pack.), 443
- apostrophe (’), 9, 46
 - key, 15, 182
- appendices, 243, 473
 - numbering of, 243, 473
- `\appendix` (struct. com.), 243, 473

- `\appendixname` (redef. name), 381
 - and `hyperref` package, 311
- `\approx` (\approx binary rel.), 493
- `\approxeq` (\cong binary rel.), 494
- `\arabic` (numeric counter style com.), 408, 408, 418
- `arc` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355
- `\arccos` (arccos math op.), 153, 500
- `\arcsin` (arcsin math op.), 153, 500
- `\arctan` (arctan math op.), 153, 500
- `\arg` (arg math op.), 153, 500
- arguments
 - and tokens, 516
 - empty (`{ }`), 54, 142, 160, 172, 173, 181, 191, 269, 297
 - long, 57
 - movable, 58, 477
 - negative, 87, 145
 - of commands, *see also under* specific commands, *see also under* specific commands, 315, 322, 336, 339, 342
 - of commutative diagram symbols, 229
 - of custom commands, 374–377
 - multiple, 374, 376
 - optional, 378
 - short, 377–378
 - of custom environments
 - optional, 385, 387, 389
 - short, 389
 - of environments, *see also under* specific environments
 - of top matter commands, *see also* top matter, 262, 263, 269–271, 274
 - optional, 55, 83, 85, 97–99, 109, 145, 146, 160, 222, 231, 238
 - multiple, 53, 54
 - of commands, 104, 106, 107, 111, 187, 188, 256, 266–269, 335, 407, 409, 416, 417, 422, 478
 - of environments, 53, 109, 112, 116, 119, 217, 231, 250, 251, 389, 488
 - of sectioning commands, 241, 475
 - of structural commands, 243, 472
 - of TikZ commands, 350
 - of top matter commands, 263–271
 - use square brackets (`[]`), 18, 53–54, 107, 116, 119, 274
 - required, 95, 97, 160, 181, 262, 263, 522
 - multiple, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181, 260, 299, 384, 412, 413
 - of commands, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181, 245, 260, 269, 412, 475, 480, 506
 - of environments, 53, 119, 211, 213, 224, 226, 253–254, 256, 297, 388–390, 478
 - use braces (`{ }`), 6, 10, 13, 53, 54, 517
 - short, 57
 - single character, 53
 - spacing within, 13, 69, 92, 138, 146, 164, 178, 180, 467
 - specifying zero in, 98
- arithmetic
 - operations, 14–15, 141–143
 - with counters, 301, 409–410
 - with length commands, 301, 412
- `around` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359
- `array` (subsid. math env.), 196, 198, 217, 220, 224–227, 227, 300, 513
 - arguments of, 225, 226
- `array` (pack.), 300
- arrays, 16–17, 224–227
- `\arraystretch` (table com.), 123
 - adjusting vertical spacing with, 123
- `arrow` (TikZ `tikz-cd` pack. com.), 361–363
- arrows, math, 160, 171, 228, 497
 - as delimiters, 149, 150, 499
- ARTICLE (bibl. entry type), 430, 434
- `article` (doc. class), 26, 31, 177, 237, 239, 262, 290, 291, 291–296, 381, 516
 - bibliographies in, 253, 255
 - sectioning commands provided by, 242
- articles
 - bibliographies in, 251–257, 429, 442, 443–444, 452
 - creating templates for, 282–285
 - in BibTeX database files, 434–435, 442
 - sectioning of, 240–243
 - top matter information
 - AMS specific, 263–274
 - AMS subject classifications, 269
 - author addresses, 266, 270, 284
 - author names, 265, 284
 - contributor, 266
 - current addresses, 267, 271
 - dedications, 265
 - e-mail addresses, 267, 270, 284
 - Internet addresses, 268, 270, 284
 - keywords, 270, 285
 - research support, 268, 270, 284, 292
 - title, 263, 285
- `\ast` ($*$ math op.), 496
- asterisk ($*$ text symbol), 64, 508
- `\asymp` (\asymp binary rel.), 493
- at sign (`@`)
 - in BibTeX database (bib) files, 430
 - in `\index` commands, 461, 462
- `\author` (top matter com.), 237, 292, 294, 319, 474
 - multiple authors in, 292
 - optional arguments of, 265, 319
- `author` (BibTeX database field), 430

- authors
 - information about
 - in AMS top matter, 265–270
 - multiple
 - in AMS documents, 270
 - in bibliographies, 432
 - in documents, 292
 - names of
 - in articles, 265, 284
 - in running heads, 265
- AutomaTeX
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 544
- automatic
 - numbering, 19, 21, 34, 103, 109, 219, 240
 - renumbering, 19, 34, 522
- `\autoref` (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 308, 308, 310
 - names supported by, 311
- aux (aux. files), 34, 34, 446, 477, 488
 - symbolic references recorded in, 518
- auxiliary files, 34, 478, 488, *see also* aux, bbl, bib, blg, bst, glo, idx, ilg, ind, lof, log, lot, out, and toc, 518
 - names of, 518
 - polishing, 488–489
- `\b` (_ underscore text accent), 63, 506
- b5paper (doc. class opt.), 294
- babel (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 299
- babel (pack.), 300, 535–536
 - options, 536
- babybeamer1.pdf (sample file), 321–323
- babybeamer2.tex (sample file), 321
- babybeamer3.tex (sample file), 326
- babybeamer4.tex (sample file), 331
- babybeamer5.tex (sample file), 327
- babybeamer6.tex (sample file), 330, 331
- babybeamer6block.tex (sample file), 331
- babybeamer7.tex (sample file), 331–335
- babybeamer8.tex (sample file), 335
- babybeamer9.tex (sample file), 337
- babybeamer10.tex (sample file), 346
- back matter, 237, 251–258, 473
 - bibliographies in, 237
 - index in, 456
 - numbering of chapters in, 473
- `\backepsilon` (≅ binary rel.), 494
- `\backmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\backprime` (∖ math sym.), 498
- backref (pack.), 308, 309
- backref (opt. of hyperref pack.), 308, 309
- `\backsim` (≈ binary rel.), 494
- `\backsimeq` (≅ binary rel.), 494
- `\backslashash` (∖ math delimiter), 149, 499
- backslash (∖ text symbol), 64, 508
- badness, 517
- balancing
 - braces, 56, 61
 - errors with, 56–57
 - in `\index` commands, 468
 - inline math delimiters, 137
 - math delimiters, 150, 204
- `\bar` (x̄ math accent), 16, 158, 158, 168, 502
- bar, vertical (| text symbol), 64, 508
- `\barwedge` (⌘ math sym.), 496
- base (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 298, 299
 - packages in, 298
- base names (of files), 518
- baseline, of text, 79, 93
 - adjusting with `setspace`, 83
- `\baselineskip` (length com.), 79, 85
- `\baselinestretch` (length com.), 83
- `\Bbbk` (k math sym.), 498
- bbl (proc. bibl. files), 452, 453
- beamer (doc. class), *see also under* presentations, 313–347
 - abstracts in, 314
 - color in, 336
 - commands
 - `\beamergotobutton`, 332
 - `\breakhere`, 339
 - `\color`, 327, 336
 - `\colorbox`, 336
 - `\fcolorbox`, 336
 - `\frametitle`, 28–30, 315, 316, 332
 - `\hyperlink`, 331
 - `\institute`, 314
 - `\note`, 342
 - `\only`, 321–323, 325–327, 331
 - `\onslide`, 321, 323, 325–327, 330, 331
 - `\pause`, 30, 87, 321, 321, 325
 - `\setbeamercolor`, 338
 - `\setbeamertheme`, 342
 - `\tableofcontents`, 316
 - `\textcolor`, 336
 - `\usecolortheme`, 344
 - `\usefonttheme`, 345
 - `\settheme`, 27, 316, 344
 - documentation for, 313, 346
 - installation of, 314
 - options
 - handout, 346
 - notes=only, 343
 - notes=show, 342
 - trans, 343, 346
 - xcolor=dvipsnam, 337
 - preamble in, 27, 314–315
 - sections in, 316
 - sidebars, 316
 - sidebars in, 316

- table of contents in, 316
 - themes, 27, 316, **343–345**
 - top matter in, 27, 314–315
- `\beamergetobutton` (beamer com.), 332
- `beamerstructure.tex` (sample file), 339, 341
- `\because` (⋅ binary rel.), 494
- `\begin` (start of env.), 51, **52**, 55, 56
- below (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 354, **357**
- Berkeley (beamer theme), 316, 319, 320, 344
- Berry, Karl, 532, 555, 557
 - font-naming scheme, 532
- `\beta` (β Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\beth` (\beth Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- `\between` (\emptyset binary rel.), 494
- Bezos, Javier, 158, 513
- `\bf` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- `\bfseries` (font weight com. dec.), **55**, 57, 74, 77, 78, 79, 107, 506
- `bfseries` (font weight env.), 107
- `bib` (BIB_TE_X database files), 427, **429–442**, 445
 - accents in, 433
 - AMS, 442, **443–444**
 - commas (,) in, 430, 431, 450
 - comments in, 449
 - cross-referencing within, 438–439
 - delimited with parentheses (()), 430
 - delimiters in, 430
 - double quote (") in, 451, 452
 - en dashes (–) in, 433
 - entries
 - abbreviations in, 442
 - capitalization in, 433
 - Jr. in, 432
 - multiple authors in, 432
 - von in, 432
 - entry types, 429–442
 - case-sensitivity of, 431
 - start with @, 430
 - equals signs (=) in, 430
 - fields in, 431, 437–440, 442
 - adding your own, 431
 - case-sensitivity of, 431
 - optional, 431, 434–442
 - required, 431, 434–442
 - rules for typing, 432–442
 - termination of, 451
 - used by AMS bibliography styles, 431
 - location of, 445
 - number ranges in, 433
 - numbers in, 430
 - periods (.) in, 432
 - portability of, 432
 - samples of, 429, 443, 452
 - ties (unbreakable spaces) in, 433
- `\bibcite` (aux. file com.), 518
- BibDesk bibl. manager, 452, 453
- `\bibitem` (bibl. com.), 20, 254
 - commas in, 256
 - labels for, 253
 - optional argument of, 256
 - spaces in, 256
- `biblatex` (pack.), 453
- bibliographies, 25, **251–257**
 - AMS support for, 442, **443–444**
 - appear in back matter, 237
 - citing references from, 20, **256**, **444**
 - as hyperlinks in PDF files, 308
 - with BIB_TE_X, 444
 - commands for, 442, 445
 - defining, 50, **251–257**, 379, 414, **429–442**
 - document class options affecting, 296, 296
 - entries made in auxiliary files for, 518
 - examples of, **251–253**, **427–429**
 - in articles, 429, 442, 452
 - multiple, in a document, 257
 - numbering of, **254**
 - portability of, 432, 434
 - sample files for, 429, 443, **443–444**, 452
 - styles, 427, 428, 443
 - AMS, **256**, 427, 432, 443, 445
 - templates, 251
 - with `amsrefs`, 453
- `\bibliography` (bibl. com.), 53, 443, **445**
- bibliography managers
 - BibDesk, 452, 453
 - BibTexMng, 452, 453
 - Ebib, 452
 - JBibtexManager, 452
 - pybibliographer, 452
- `\bibliographystyle` (bibl. com.), 443, **445**
- `\bibname` (redef. name), 257, 381
- BIB_TE_X, 309, 427–453
 - AMS support for, 442
 - citing references with, 444
 - commands, **442**, 445
 - log files, *see* `blg`
 - running, 443–452
 - sample files for, 429, 443, **443–444**
 - style files, *see* `bst`
 - styles, 427, 428, 432, 443, 445
- BIB_TE_X 1.0 (Patashnik), 560
- BIB_TE_Xing* (Patashnik), 452
- BibTexMng bibl. manager, 452, 453
- `\Big` (math delim. size com.), 150
- `\big` (math delim. size com.), 150
- `\bigcap` (\bigcap large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigcirc` (\bigcirc math op.), 496
- `\bigcup` (\bigcup large math op.), 156, 501
- `\Bigg` (math delim. size com.), 150
- `\bigg` (math delim. size com.), 150

- `\Biggl` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\biggl` (math delim. size com.), 151, 168
- `\biggm` (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 152
- `\Biggr` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\biggr` (math delim. size com.), 151, 168
- `\Bigl` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\bigl` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\bigm` (math delim., as binary rel. size com.), 152
- `\bigodot` (\odot large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigoplus` (\oplus large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigotimes` (\otimes large math op.), 156, 501
- `\Bigr` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\bigr` (math delim. size com.), 151
- `\bigskip` (spacing com.), 40, **88**
- `\bigscup` (\sqcup large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigstar` (\star math sym.), 498
- `\bigtriangledown` (∇ math op.), 496
- `\bigtriangleup` (\triangle math op.), 496
- `\biguplus` (\uplus large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigvee` (\vee large math op.), 156, 501
- `\bigwedge` (\wedge large math op.), 156, 501
- binary operations, 172, 182, 496
 - + and – rule, 175, 201, 204
 - adding white space around, 139
 - and alignment of displayed formulas, 205
 - and breaking displayed formulas, 201, 204, 205
 - created with `\overset`, 180
 - created with `\underset`, 166
 - defining, 182
 - and subformulas, 204
 - for congruences, 154
- binary relations, 41, **152**, 165, 172, **173**, 175, 493, 494
 - adding white space around, 139
 - and alignment of displayed formulas, 205
 - and breaking displayed formulas, 205
 - created with `\overset`, 166, 180
 - defining, 182
 - delimiters as, 152
 - math delimiters as, 152
 - negated, 165, **181**, 495
- `\binom` (math com.), 15, 143
- binomial coefficients, 15, 143
 - in inline and displayed math environments, 143
- bitmap fonts, 531
- Black, Alison, 555, 557
- blackboard bold (math alphabet), 165, **184**, 396
- `\blacklozenge` (\blacklozenge math sym.), 498
- `\blacksquare` (\blacksquare math sym.), 498
- `\blacktriangle` (\blacktriangle math sym.), 498
- `\blacktriangledown` (\blacktriangledown math sym.), 498
- `\blacktriangleleft` (\blacktriangleleft binary rel.), 494
- `\blacktriangleright` (\blacktriangleright binary rel.), 494
- blank
 - lines
 - in bibliographies, 309
 - in displayed math environments, 37, 137, 140, 203
 - in inline math environments, 137
 - in text environments, 41, 102
 - in top matter commands, 263
 - in `verbatim` environments, 130
 - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 41, **48**, 83, 102, 128, 309
 - math delimiters, 150, 166
 - math symbol for commutative diagrams (\circledast), 229
- `blg` (BIBTEX log files), 448
- `block` (`beamer` env.), 330–331
- Blue Sky Research, 515, 531
- blue spaces, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, non-breakable spaces, 60
- `bm` (pack.), 300
- `Bmatrix` (subsid. math env.), **223**
- `bmatrix` (subsid. math env.), **223**
- `\bmod` (mod math op.), **154**, 155, 496
- body
 - of books, 473
 - of documents, 8, 25, 52, 161, **236–258**
 - of environments, 52
 - of page, 258
 - of presentations, 315
- bold
 - font weight, 10, 73, 74, **77**, 78, 79, **107**, 147, 168, **183**, 183, 184, 289, 396, 506
 - math symbols, **185–186**, 289, 300
- `\boldsymbol` (math font weight com.), 168, 184, **185**, 289, 502
- BOOK (bibl. entry type), 430, **435–436**
- book (doc. class), xxx, 31, 241, 381, 471, **472–474**, 476, 514, 516
- BOOKLET (bibl. entry type), 430, **441**
- `bookmarks=true` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 308
- bookmarks, in PDF documents, 309
- books
 - bodies of, 473
 - document classes for, 31, 241, 471, **472–474**, 476, 478, 514, 516
 - options of, 474
 - final preparation of, 484–489
 - in BIBTEX database files, 435–436
 - logical design of, 481–483
 - numbering of structures in, 472
 - sectioning of, **472–473**, 481
 - structure of, 473
 - top matter of, 239

- writing with L^AT_EX, 471–489
- booktabs (pack.), 124
- booktitle (BIB_TE_X database field), 431, 439
- \bot (\perp math sym.), 498
- bottoms, of text boxes, 413
- \bowtie (\bowtie binary rel.), 493
- \Box (\square math sym.), 498
- \boxdot (\boxdot math op.), 496
- boxes, 91–99
 - and length commands, 413
 - around formulas, 193
 - commands for measuring, 413
 - invisible, *see* struts
 - multiline, 91
 - paragraph, 95–96
 - solid, 97–98, *see also* struts
 - text, 91–99
 - alignment of contents in, 92, 96
 - behave as single characters, 91
 - commands for, 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, **91**, 91–99, 122, 124, 138, 146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289
 - environments for, 91, 93, 96, 388, 389
 - fine tuning placement of, 99
 - framed, **93–94**
 - measurements of, 413
 - single line, 91–93, 146
 - vertical alignment of, 96, 99
- \boxminus (\boxminus math op.), 496
- \boxplus (\boxplus math op.), 496
- \boxtimes (\boxtimes math op.), 496
- Braams, Johannes, xxxi, 513, 535, 557, 560
- braces
 - must be balanced, 36, 56, 61, 71, 163, 468
 - special, 13, 55–57, 136, 137, 140
 - cannot overlap, 56–57
 - environments act as, 55
 - stretchable horizontal, 159–160
- braces, curly ($\{ \}$), 6, 10, 13, 15, 53–55, 142, 165, 172, 173, 191, 204, 205, 269, 274, 370, 384
 - and command declarations, 371
 - as math delimiters, 41, 149, 499
 - define scope, 55–57
 - in BIB_TE_X entries, 430, 432, 433, 442
 - in \index commands, 468
 - in text ($\{ \}$), 61, 64, 508, 517
 - unbalanced, 36, 38, 61
 - with \def, 383
- brackets, square ($[]$), 7, 46
 - as math delimiters, **15**, 149, 499
 - breaking formula lines within, 205
 - enclose optional arguments, 18, **53–54**, 107, 116, 119, 147, 319
 - with \newcommand, 374
- \breakhere (beamer com.), 339
- breaking
 - formulas, *see under* formulas
 - lines, *see under* lines
 - paragraphs, *see under* paragraphs
- breve (\sim text accent), 63, 506
- \breve (\breve math accent), 158, 502
- Bringhurst, Robert, 51, 555, 557
- browsers, *see under* Internet
- bst (BIB_TE_X style files), **427**, 427, 428, 432, 443, 445
 - determine use of fields, 431
 - form of citations created by, 434
 - location of, 445
- \bullet (\bullet math op.), 496
- bullet (\bullet text sym.), 64, 508
- bulleted lists, 103
- \Bumpeq (\bumpeq binary rel.), 494
- \bumpeq (\bumpeq binary rel.), 494
- Butcher, Judith, 555, 557
- \bysame (bibl. com.), **256**, 379
- \c (\c cedilla text accent), 63, 506
- © (copyright text sym.), 64, 508
- calc (pack.), 301, 410, 413
- calligraphic (math alphabet), 169, **184**, 289, 396, 502
- \Cap (\Cap math op.), 496
- \cap (\cap math op.), 496
- capitalization, in bibliographic databases, 256
- \caption, 37
 - in figures, 249
 - in tables, 27, 248
 - optional argument of, 478
- captions, 118, 478
 - in figures, 249
 - in lists, **104**, 478
 - in tables, 27, 248
 - multiple, 248
- caret ($\^$), 61
- Carlisle, David, xxxi, 107, 120, 246, 249, 308, 372, 513, 560
- caron ($\ˇ$ text accent), 63, 506
- case-sensitivity
 - of BIB_TE_X fields and entry types, 431
 - of command names, **53**
 - of environment names, **53**
 - of \label arguments, 245
 - of sort keys in \index commands, 468
- cases (subsid. math env.), 23–24, 196, 198, **227–228**
 - page breaks in, 230
- \ccname (redef. name), 381
- CD (subsid. math env.), 228–230

- `\cdot` (math op.), 14, **141**, 496
- `\cdots` (centered ellipsis), 41, **144**, 170
- cedilla (ç text accent), 63, 506
- ceiling math delimiters, 149, 499
- `center` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 358
- `center` (text align. env.), 6, 41, 90, **108**, 118, 215, 414
 - breaking lines in, 108
 - L^AT_EX definition of, 422
- `\centerdot` (math op.), 496
- centered ellipses, **16**, 143
- `\centering` (alignment com. declaration), **108**, 215, 315
- centering text, 6, 10, 41, 108
 - in columns in `tabular` environments, 119
 - in presentations, 315
 - in tables, 118, 120
- `centertags` (doc. class opt.), **286**
- centimeter (cm abs. unit), 90, 92, 95, 411
- `\cfrac` (math com.), **187**
- `\chapter` (struct. com.), 241, 243, 292, **472**
 - arguments of, 472
 - numbering of
 - equations in, 472
 - in front and back matter, 473
- `chapter` (counter), 406, 407
- `chapter` (BIB_TE_X database field), 431
- `\chaptername` (redef. name), 381
 - and `hyperref` package, 311
- chapters
 - document class options to set start pages for, 474
 - grouping into parts, 472
 - in BIB_TE_X database files, 441
 - in books, 472
 - numbering of, in front and back matter, 473
- characters, *see also* glyphs
 - accented, 7, 11, 46, 53, **63**, 66, **157–158**, 167, 309, 423, 433
 - European, 11, **63**, 505–506
 - following `verbatim` environments, 130
 - Greek, 147, 148, 165, 393–396, 492
 - Hebrew, 147, 491
 - invalid, 7, 47
 - math, 12, 47
 - special, 7, **47**, **60–62**
 - accessing with `\symbol`, 61, 299
 - in `\index` commands, 463
 - treating text boxes as, 91
- `\check` (x̄ math accent), 158, 502
- checkers, spelling, 35
- Chen, Pehong, 455, 469, 557
- `\chi` (χ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\circ` (o math op.), 496
- `\circeq` (≐ binary rel.), 494
- `circle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), **351**, 351–355, 359
 - `\circlearrowleft` (↺ math arrow), 497
 - `\circlearrowright` (↻ math arrow), 497
 - `\circledast` (⊛ math op.), 496
 - `\circledcirc` (⊙ math op.), 496
 - `\circleddash` (⊖ math op.), 496
 - `\circledS` (⊚ math sym.), 498
- circumflex (˘)
 - text accent, 63, 506
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- citations, bibliographic, 20, 40, 243, **254**, **445**
 - created by BIB_TE_X styles, 434, **444**
 - hyperlinks in PDF files, 308
 - showing in margins, 246
- `\cite` (bibliographic com.), 20, 40, 243, **254**
 - multiple citations, 256
 - optional argument of, 256
 - showing contents, in margin, 301
 - showing labels in margins, 246
 - spaces in, 256
 - with BIB_TE_X, 444
- classes, document, *see* document classes
- classification of math symbols, **172–173**, 182
- `\cleardoublepage` (page breaking com.), 85
- `cleardoublepage.sty` (sample file), 85
- `\clearpage` (page breaking com.), **85**, **86**, **251**
- clients
 - FTP, 526
- `\cline` (table com.), 121–122, 122
- Cloud and iPad, 539, 548
- `cls` (doc. class files), 238, 380, 418
- `\clubsuit` (♣ math sym.), 498
- CM (Computer Modern) fonts, *see* Computer Modern fonts
- cm (centimeter abs. unit), 90, 92, 95, 411
- `cmr10.tfm` (T_EX font metric file), 516
- `code.tex` (sample file), 364
- coefficients, binomial, *see* binomial coefficients
- collections, in BIB_TE_X database files, 437–438
- `\colon` (: math com.), 41, 47, **175**
- colophons, of books, 473
- color
 - in presentations, 336–338
 - in TikZ graphics, 360
- `\color` (beamer com.), 327, 336
- `\colorbox` (beamer com.), 336
- `colorlinks` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 308, 309
- `column` (beamer env.), 335
- columns
 - double
 - document class options for, 287, 295
 - figures spanning, 249
 - footnotes in, 301
 - tables spanning, 249

- in presentations, 335
 - math
 - adjusted, 220–230
 - adjusting with `f1align` environment, 209
 - in aligned formulas, 207–220
 - specifying in `matrix` subsidiary environments, 221
 - multiple, **86**, 301, 513
 - separator (&), 17, 119, 207, 208
 - width of, in `tabular` environments, 120
- columns (beamer env.), 335
- combining
 - document class options, 296
 - encapsulators in `\index` commands, 460
- command declarations, **57**, **108**, 120, 215
 - affecting multiple paragraphs, 75
 - do not take arguments, 57
 - for fonts, *see* font command declarations
 - scope of, **74**, **371–372**, 387
 - using in custom commands, 75, **371–372**
- command files, *see also* `sty` files *and* packages, **238**, **370**, **390–400**
- commands in, 391
- terminating, 399
- commands, 51–58, 177
 - *-ed form, **53**, 82, 85, 87, 89, 113, 114, 132, 182, 183, 231, 241, 310, 377, 380, 387, 389, 445, 473, 475
 - arguments of, *see under* arguments *or* specific commands, 315
 - as tokens, 516
 - custom, *see* custom commands
 - defining, *see* custom commands
 - delimited, *see* delimited commands
 - for boxes, *see under* boxes
 - for expanding values, **63–65**, 70, 71, 97, 408
 - for filling horizontal space, **90–91**, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422
 - for fonts, *see* font commands
 - for graphics, *see under* graphics
 - for indexing, *see under* indexing
 - for presentations, *see under* presentations, `beamer`, *see under* presentations, `beamer`, *and* `FoilTeX`
 - for tables, *see under* tables *or* floats
 - fragile, 58
 - protecting, **58**, 240, 241, 472, 477
 - generalized, *see* custom commands
 - global, *see under* scope
 - in preamble, *see under* preamble
 - length, *see* length commands
 - local, *see under* scope
 - logical design using, 35
 - long, 57
 - names of, 52
 - case-sensitivity of, **53**
 - primitive, *see* primitive commands
 - providing, 379
 - redefining, 378–379
 - scope of, *see under* scope
 - sectioning, *see* structural commands
 - short, **57**, 74, 263, 274
 - defining, 377–378
 - spacing, *see* spacing commands
 - start with `\`, 6, 10, **52**
 - structural, *see* structural commands
 - terminating, 13, **52**, **138**
 - `TeX`, *see under* `TeX`
 - text style, *see* text style commands
 - to avoid using, 79, 483
 - types of, 57–58
 - user-defined, *see* custom commands
- commas (,), 7, 46
 - and italic correction, 76
 - in `\bibitem` commands, 256
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 430, 431, 450
 - use in formulas, 139
- `comment` (comment env.), **70–71**, 301, 391, 513
 - locating errors with, 71
 - nesting, 70
- comments, **8**, 68–71
 - block comment, 70, 480
 - creating with % characters, 69, 70, 125, 282
 - creating with `comment` environments, **70–71**
 - finding errors using, 37, 70, 370, 391
 - in `BIBTeX` database files, 70, 449
 - inserted using `kill` command, 125
 - marginal, **96–97**, 486
 - in double-sided documents, 97
 - in equations, 96
 - in multiline math environments, 96
 - space between, 411
 - width of paragraph box for, 97
 - removing end-of-line characters with, 68, 69, 464
- common errors, 39–41
- commutative diagrams, **228–230**, 289
- `comp.text.tex` (newsgroup), 529
- `\complement` (\complement math sym.), 498
- components
 - building formulas from, 161–163
 - of formulas, 14–18, 140–163
 - of pages, 258
- Comprehensive `TeX` Archive Network, *see* CTAN
- Computer Modern (CM) fonts, 73, **73**, 74, 77, 532, 533
 - bold extended, 73
 - ligatures in, 62
 - math bold italic, 183

- math italic, 183
- PostScript versions of, 31, 513, 515, **531**
- roman, 73, 183, 516
- sans serif, 73
- typewriter, 61, 62, 74
- conference proceedings, in $\text{BIB}\TeX$ database files, 430, 436–438
- `\cong` (\cong binary rel.), 493
- congruences, 15, 154
 - as binary operations, 154
- consecutive numbering, of proclamations, 111–112
- contents, table of, *see under* tables
- `\contentsline` (toc file com.), 475
- `\contentsname` (redef. name), 381
- context, affects style of emphasized text, 75
- continued fractions, 187
- `\contrib` (top matter com.), 266
- `contrib` ($\text{L}\TeX$ distr. directory), 527
- `controls` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356
- controls, float, 118, **250–251**
- converting
 - files to PDF, 307
 - from articles to presentations, 314
- Cook, Tim, 539
- `\coprod` (\coprod large math op.), 156, 501
- `\copyright` (C copyright), 64, 508
- corner math delimiters (\llcorner , \lrcorner , \ulcorner , \urcorner), 149, 499
- corollaries, *see* proclamations
- correction, italic, *see* italic correction
- `\cos` (cos math op.), 153, 500
- `\cosh` (cosh math op.), 153, 500
- `\cot` (cot math op.), 153, 500
- `\coth` (coth math op.), 153, 500
- counters, 107, 221, 383, **406–410**
 - and `\include` commands, 407
 - and `\label` commands, 409
 - and proclamations, 406
 - arithmetic with, 301, **409–410**
 - defined in preamble, 408
 - defining, 407
 - incrementing, 409
 - $\text{L}\TeX$, 407
 - linking with other counters, 407, 409
 - names of, 112
 - store numbers, 406
 - styles for, 71, 107, 387, 408, **408–409**, 418
 - values of, 34, 71, 408
 - printing, **63–65**, 97, **408**
 - setting, 406–407, 409
 - with list environments, 418
- Courier, in $\text{L}\TeX$ documents, 532
- `covers.pdf` (sample file), 26
- Crémer, Jacques, 350
- cross-referencing, **243–248**, 257, 310
 - among multiple documents, 301
 - and automatic renumbering, 19, 34, 522
 - entries made in auxiliary files for, 518
 - in indexes, 463
 - in proof environment titles, 116
 - inside presentations, 316
 - labels for, **19**, 22, 27, 37, 40, 70, 191, 203, 219, 240, **243**, 247, 248, 257, 409
 - of equations, 18–20, 22, 40, 139, 191, 207, 244
 - groups of, 205–207
 - in multiline math environments, 203
 - of list items, 103, 107
 - of tables, 118
 - page numbers, 19, 22, **247**, 257, 486, 518
 - with `varioref` package, 301
 - section numbers, 22, 107, 116, 118, 118, 139, 203, 240, **243**, 244, 289, 518
 - using ties (\sim) with, **50**, 246
 - within $\text{BIB}\TeX$ databases, 438–439
- `crossref` ($\text{BIB}\TeX$ database field), 431
- `\csc` (csc math op.), 153, 500
- CTAN (Comprehensive \TeX Archive Network), 298, 525, **526–528**, 529, 532, 534
 - catalogue, 527
 - mirrors of, 527
 - packages on, 470, 528
 - URLs for, 526
- `\Cup` (C math op.), 496
- `\cup` (\cup math op.), 496
- `\curlyeqprec` (\preccurlyeq binary rel.), 494
- `\curlyeqsucc` (\succcurlyeq binary rel.), 494
- `\curlyvee` (\vee math op.), 496
- `\curlywedge` (\wedge math op.), 496
- `\curraddr` (top matter com.), 267
 - rules for using, 267
- `\curvearrowleft` (\curvearrowleft math arrow), 176, 497
- `\curvearrowright` (\curvearrowright math arrow), 176, 497
- custom commands, 39, **368–385**, 482
 - arguments of, 374–378
 - as shorthand, 368–378
 - as tokens, 516
 - command declarations in, 75
 - scope of, **371–372**, 387
 - defining, 71, 83, 116, 123, 256, 257, 368, 370, 377–381, 408
 - in preamble, 238
 - delimited, 383–385
 - for environments, 369
 - for indexing, 375, 460
 - for subformulas, 375–377
 - for text, 370
 - invoking, 370
 - multiple arguments of, 53
 - optional arguments of, 378

- rules, 370, 371
- short arguments, 377–378
- with `\def`, 383
- custom environments, **385–390**, 481, 484, 516
 - defining, 386
 - for custom lists, 414–422
 - optional arguments of, 389
 - short arguments, 389
- customizing, 368, 390
 - article templates
 - for AMS document classes, 282–285
 - preambles of, 282
 - top matter of, 282
 - indentation of text, 88
 - \LaTeX , 367–424
 - dangers of, 422–424
 - lists
 - and counters, 418
 - defining new, 414–422
 - theorem styles, 115
- cyrillic (\LaTeX distr. directory), 299
- cyrillic (pack.), 300
- `\d` (underdot text accent), 63, 506
- `\dag` († dagger)
 - math symbol, 498
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- `\dagger` († math op.), 496
- `\daleth` (⌘ Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- `dashed` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360–362
- dashes, 46
 - em dash (—), **11, 59, 64, 508**
 - en dash (–), **11, 59, 64, 508**
 - in \BIBTeX databases, 433
- `\dashleftarrow` (\leftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\dashrightarrow` (\rightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\dashv` (\dashv binary rel.), 493
- databases, \BIBTeX , *see also* `bib`, 427, **429–442**, 445
- `\date` (top matter com.), 65, 237, 265, 292, 474
 - with `letter` document class, 297
- `\datename` (redef. name), 381
- dates
 - commands for, 10, 54, **63–65**, 535
 - \LaTeX release, 69, 239, 519
 - of packages, 520
- Davey, Brian, 39
- `\day` (time com.), 65
- `\dbinom` (display-style binomial com.), 143
- `dcolumn` (pack.), 120, 301
- `\ddag` (‡ dagger)
 - math symbol, 498
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- `\ddagger` (‡ math op.), 496
- `\ddddot` ($\ddot{\ddot{x}}$ math accent), 158, 502
- `\dddot` ($\ddot{\dot{x}}$ math accent), 158, 502
- `\ddot` (\ddot{x} math accent), 158, 502
- `\ddots` (\ddots diagonal ellipsis), 144, 223
- decimals, alignment on, 120, 301
- declarations, command, *see* command declarations
- `\DeclareMathOperator` (op. def. com.), 39, 182, 183, 186, 238, 289, 379
- `\DeclareMathOperator*` (op. with limits def. com.), 182, 380
- declaring, types of math symbols, 182
- `\dedicatory` (top matter com.), 265
- `\def` (\TeX com.), 424
 - defining commands with, 39, 383
 - overwriting previously defined commands with, 383
- definition (procl. style), **113**, 113–115
- `\deg` (deg math op.), 153, 500
- `delarray` (pack.), 301
- delimited commands, 383–385
 - invoking, 383
- delimiters
 - for displayed math environments, 13, 19, 41
 - for inline math environments, 13, 58, 136–137
 - for `\verb` commands, 131
 - in \BIBTeX database files, 430
 - math, *see* math delimiters
- `\Delta` (Δ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\delta` (δ Greek char.), 147, 492
- depth
 - of tables of contents, 410
 - of text boxes, 93, 96, 413, 413
- `\depth` (length com.), 92, **93**, 96
- description (text list env.), 102, 104–105
- design
 - logical, 35, 235
 - of books, 481–483
 - of document classes, 512
 - visual, 35, 235, 258–260, 345
- `\det` (det math op.), 153, 500
- device independent files, *see* DVI files
- `\dfrac` ($\frac{x}{y}$), 141, **169**, 187
- `\DH` (Eth Eur. char.), 509
- `\dh` (eth Eur. char.), 509
- `\diagdown` (\diagdown math sym.), 498
- diagonal ellipses, 223
- diagrams, commutative, *see* commutative diagrams
- `\diagup` (\diagup math sym.), 498
- `\Diamond` (\diamond math sym.), 498
- `\diamond` (\diamond math op.), 496
- `\diamondsuit` (\diamond math sym.), 498
- dieresis, *see* `umlaut`

- diesis (‡)
 - math symbol, 496, 498
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- `\digamma` (\digamma Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\dim` (dim math op.), 153, 500
- dimensions, *see also* measurements
 - units for measuring, 11, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 95, 174, 296, 411, 503
 - with length commands, 411
- directories, *see under* AMS and \LaTeX distributions
- `\displaybreak` (display break com.), 231
 - optional argument of, 231
- displayed formulas, *see* displayed math environments, *see also* displayed math environments
- displayed fractions, *see under* fractions
- displayed math environments, 17–24, 41, **136**
 - `\[` (start math mode), 13, 41, **136**
 - Visual Guide* to, **195**, 196
 - `\]` (end math mode), 13, 41, **136**
 - act as special braces, 136
 - `align`, 21–23, 41, 196, 198, **207–211**, 218, 219, 230
 - `align*`, 22, 209, 214
 - `alignat`, 41, 196, 198, **211–213**
 - blank lines in, 37
 - breaking pages in, **230–231**
 - `displaymath`, 136, 137, 139, 140, 219
 - `eqnarray`, 209–210
 - equation, 18, 23, **139–140**, 189, 219, 316
 - `equation*`, 19, 140, **140**, 189, 219, 316
 - `flalign`, 196, 198, **209**, 219
 - font size in, 186
 - `gather`, 41, 196, 198, **199–200**, 206, 219, 230
 - `gather*`, 199
 - in direct succession, 484
 - inline-style binomials in, 143
 - `multiline`, 196, 198, **200–202**
 - `multiline*`, 201–202
 - subequations, **190**, 191, 206, 409
- displayed text environments, 101, 127–131
 - `alltt`, 143, 299
 - blank lines in, 102
 - `multicols`, 86, 513
 - quotation, **128**
 - quote, 40, **127**
 - tabbing, **125–127**
 - `tabular`, 62, **117–124**, 226, 249, 300, 301, 513
 - `theorem`, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388
 - `verbatim`, **129–131**, 132, 301
 - `verse`, **128–129**
 - `xcb`, 478
- `displaymath` (disp. math env.), 136, 137, 139, 140, 219
- `\displaystyle` (math font size com.), **186**, 191
- dissertations, in \BIBTeX database files, **439–440**
- distributions
 - AMS packages, 261, **288–290**, 313, 385, 424, 442, 443, 511
 - \LaTeX , 62, 69, 246, 291–296, **298–302**, 515, **516**, 519, 520, 527, 528, 535
 - PSNFSS, 532–533
 - \TeX , 515
- `\div` (\div math op.), **141**, 496
- `\divideontimes` (\oslash math op.), 496
- division, 14, 47, 141, 175, 496
- `\DJ` (Dyet Eur. char.), 509
- `\dj` (dyet Eur. char.), 509
- `doc` (\LaTeX distr. directory), 299
- document (text env.), 8, 52, 161, 236
- document class options
 - 9pt, **285**
 - 10pt, **88**, **285**, **294**
 - 11pt, **285**, **294**
 - 12pt, **77**, **285**, **294**
 - a4paper, 286, 294
 - a5paper, 294
 - are passed on to packages, 238
 - b5paper, 294
 - centertags, **286**
 - combining, 296
 - draft, 81, 237, 288, **294**
 - executivepaper, 294
 - final, 288, 294
 - fleqn, 137, **286**, 295
 - for AMSFonts, 288
 - for bibliographies, **296**, 296
 - for double-column documents, 287, 295
 - for double-sided printing, 287, 295, 474
 - for font sizes, 285, 294
 - for page orientation, 295
 - for position of equation numbers, 286, 295
 - for start of chapters, 474
 - for title pages, 287, 295, 474
 - handout, 346
 - landscape, 295
 - legalpaper, 69, 286, 294
 - leqno, **286**, 295
 - letterpaper, 286, 294
 - noamsfonts, 288
 - nomath, **288**
 - notitlepage, **287**, 295, 474
 - onecolumn, 287, 295
 - oneside, **287**, 295, 474
 - openany, 474
 - openbib, **296**, 296
 - openright, 474

- psamsfonts, 288
- reqno, **286**, 295
- tbtags, **286**
- titlepage, 237, **287**, 295, 474
- trans, 346
- twocolumn, 69, 86, 249, **287**, 295, 296, 301
- twoside, 69, 237, **287**, 295, 296, 474
- document classes, 35, 65, 220, 381, 516
 - amsart, 24–290, 471, 474, 516, 522
 - amsbook, xxx, 31, 241, 471, 474, 478, 516
 - amsproc, 263, 516
 - anatomy of, 24
 - article, 26, 31, 177, 237, 239, 242, 253, 255, 262, 290, 291, **291–296**, 516
 - beamer, 313–347
 - book, xxx, 31, 241, 471, 474, 476, 514, 516
 - changing, 523
 - cls files, 238, 380, 418
 - design of, 512
 - determine
 - placement of equation numbers, 286, 295
 - position of equations, 286, 295
 - spacing, 86
 - for books, 31, 241, 471, **472–474**, 476, 478, 514, 516
 - options of, 474
 - for presentations, *see under* beamer
 - legacy, 102, 237, 242, 253, 262, 290, 293, **291–302**, 516
 - letter, 296–298, 516
 - proc, 516
 - proc-1, 262
 - report, 241, 291, **291–296**, 516
 - sample, 8
 - sample.cls, 8
 - slides, 291, 516
- document font families, 6, 10, 74, **73–74**, **77**, **107**, 146, 289, 396, 420, 506, 532
 - normal, 74
 - roman, **74**, 532
 - sans serif, **74**, 532
 - typewriter style, **74**, 532
- documentation
 - for beamer document class, 313, 346
 - for L^AT_EX, 299
 - packages, 300
- \documentclass (preamble com.), 5, 24, **53**, 69, 164, 228, 237, 282, 314, 342, 350
 - and \NeedsTeXFormat command, 238
- documents
 - body of, 8, 25, 52, 161, **236–258**
 - cross-referencing among multiple, 301
 - design of, 258–260
 - L^AT_EX, 235–260
 - on the Internet, 305–311
 - using AMS document classes in, 261
 - legacy, 307
 - master, 479–481
 - preamble of, 237–239
 - printing and viewing, 6, 307, 517
 - readability of, 77, 345
 - scanning originals, 307
 - splitting into multiple files, 479–481
 - dollar sign (\$), *see also* \$ and \\$, **7**
 - as inline math delimiter, 12, 13, 58, 136, **136**, 508
 - as text symbol, 61, 64
 - Doob, Michael, 94, 350, 515, 557
 - \dot (x math accent), 158, 502
 - \doteq (\doteq binary rel.), 493, 494
 - \dotfill (space fill com.), 90
 - dotless i and j (i and j), **63**, 63, 506
 - \dotplus (\dotplus math op.), 496
 - dots
 - filling lines with, 90
 - \dots (... math ellipsis com.), 16, 41, 62, 143–144, 170
 - \dotsc (... math com.), 144
 - \dotted (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356, 360
 - double accents, in math, **157**
 - double acute (ˆ text accent), 63, 506
 - double dagger (‡)
 - math symbol, 496, 498
 - text symbol, 64, 508
 - double guillemet, 509
 - double quote ("), 7, *see also* quotation marks, **59**, 64, 508
 - in \index commands, 463
 - in B^IB_T_EX database fields, 451, **452**
 - key, 7, 47, 59
 - double spacing, 83
 - double subscripts and superscripts, font size of, 186
 - double vertical lines in CD environments, 229
 - double-column
 - documents
 - and footnotes, 301
 - document class options for, 69, 287, 295
 - figures and tables, 249
 - double-sided printing
 - and marginal comments, 97
 - document class options for, 69, 287, 295, 474
 - \doublebarwedge ($\overline{\wedge}$ math op.), 496
 - \doublecap (\cap math op.), 496
 - \doublecup (\cup math op.), 496

- `\doublespacing` (`setspace` com.), 83
- `\Downarrow` (\Downarrow)
 - math arrow, 497, 499
 - math delimiter, 149
- `\downarrow` (\downarrow)
 - math arrow, 497
 - math delimiter, 149, 499
- `\downdownarrows` (\Downarrow math arrow), 497
- Downes, Michael, 452, 453, 513, 514
- `\downharpoonleft` (\Downarrow math arrow), 497
- `\downharpoonright` (\Downarrow math arrow), 497
- `draft` (doc. class opt.), 81, 237, 288, **294**
- `\draw` (TikZ graphics com.), **352**, 360
- drivers
 - printer, 34, 300, 307, **517**, 527
 - video (DVI viewer), 517
 - video), 34
- Dropbox file transferring, 541, 544, 548, 550
- Duchier, Denys, 513
- Duma, Jacques, 364, 560
- Dupré, Lyn, 68, 557
- DVI files, 517, 527
 - printing, 517
 - viewing, 517
- `dvipdf` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dvipdfm` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dvipdfmx` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dvips` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dvipsnam` (opt. of `xcolor` pack.), 337
- `dvipsone` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dviwindo` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `dyet` (Eur. char), 509

- Ebib bibl. manager, 452
- editing cycle, 5
- `edition` (BIB \TeX database field), 431
- `editor` (BIB \TeX database field), 431
- editors, text, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 68, 72, 369, 543
- Eijkhout, Victor, 555, 557
- electronic mail address, *see* `\email`
- `\ell` (ℓ math sym.), 498
- `ellipse` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355, 358
- ellipses (...)
 - centered (\cdots), **16**, **144**
 - diagonal, 223
 - in math, **16**, **143–144**, 221
 - in text, **62**
 - vertical, 223
- `\em` (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 77, 107, 372, 387, 506
- `em` (font shape env.), 107
- `em` (rel. unit), 411, 503
- `em dash` (—), **11**, **59**, 64, 67, 508
- EM fonts, *see* European Modern fonts
- Emacs, 452

- `\email` (top matter com.), 267–268, 271–273, 283, 284
 - rules for using, 267–268
- `\emph` (font shape com.), 6, 10, 51, 74, **75**, 325, 506
- emphasized (font shape), 6, 10, 19, 51, 74, **75**, 76, **107**, 109, 139, 140, 372, 387, 506
 - and italic correction, 77
 - context dependence of, 75
- empty (page style), 258
- empty group ($\{ \}$), 54, 142, 160, 172, 173, 181, 191, 269, 297
- `\emptyset` (\emptyset math sym.), 498
- `en dash` (—), **11**, 64, 67, 508
 - in BIB \TeX databases, 433
- `\enclname` (redef. name), 381
- encodings, font, *see* font encodings
- `\end` (end of env.), 51, **52**, 55
 - errors with, 56, 130, 480
- `end angle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355
- `\endinput` (input ending com.), 399, **480**
- `eng` (Eur. char), 509
- `\enlargethispage` (spacing com.), **85**, 486, 488
- `\enlargethispage*` (spacing com.), 85
- `\ensuremath` (math mode com.), **373**, 374, 379
- Enter key, *see* Return key
- entries
 - glossary, *see under* glossaries
 - index, *see under* indexing
- `enumerate` (list text env.), 301, 387
- `enumerate` (pack.), 107, 301, 387, 391
- `enumi` (counter), 107, 407
- `enumii` (counter), 407
- `enumiii` (counter), 407
- `enumiv` (counter), 407
- environments, 6, 10, 13, **51–58**
 - *-ed forms, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 219, 249
 - act as braces, 55
 - arguments of, *see under* arguments or specific environments
 - \backslash in, 108, 129
 - begin with `\begin`, **52**, 55
 - body of, 52
 - case-sensitivity of names of, **53**
 - custom, *see* custom environments, *see* custom environments
 - end with `\end`, **52**, 55
 - font size, 107
 - for figures and graphics, *see under* TikZ
 - for presentations, *see under* beamer and Foil \TeX
 - for tables, *see* tables
 - indenting contents of, in source file, 139
 - legacy, 107, 127–129, 414

- list, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments
- logical design using, 522
 - typesetting environment names, 522
- math, *see under* inline and displayed math environments, subsidiary math environments, *and* displayed text environments
- modifying, 385–388
- `\newline` in, 83
- operating, *see under* Windows computer, Mac, *and* UNIX
- short, 389
- subsidiary math, *see* subsidiary math environments
- visual design using
 - typesetting environment names, 522
- EPS (Encapsulated PostScript) files, 479
- `\epsilon` (ϵ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\eqcirc` (\approx binary rel.), 494
- `eqnarray` (math align. env.), 209–210
- `\eqref` (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 40, 139, 140, 191, 203, 207, 243, 244, 254, 316, 374
- `\eqslantgtr` (\gtr binary rel.), 494
- `\eqslantless` (\lesssim binary rel.), 494
- equals (=)
 - binary relation, 47, 493
 - in BibTeX database fields, 430
 - key, 7
- `equation` (counter), 406, 407
- `equation` (disp. math env.), 18, 23, 139–140, 189, 219, 316
 - blank lines in, 140
- `equation*` (disp. math env.), 19, 140, 140, 189, 219, 316
- `\equationname` (hyperref redef. name), 311
- equations, 18–20
 - document class options for placement of numbers, 286, 295
 - grouping, 190–191
 - in multiline math environments, 203
 - in presentations, 316
 - labels for, 19, 244
 - marginal comments in, 96
 - numbering of, 18–20, 40, 139–140, 189, 199, 201, 203
 - groups, 205–207
 - in chapters of books, 472
 - preventing, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219
 - variants, 190, 206
 - within sections, 19, 140, 238
 - position of, 286, 295
 - systems of, 212–213
 - tagging, 20, 189–191, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219
- `\equiv` (\equiv)
 - binary relation, 493
 - math operator, 15, 155, 165, 376, 384
- error messages
 - Missing `\right. inserted`, 204
- errors
 - common, 39–41
 - eszett (β , SS), 64, 505, 536
 - `\eta` (η Greek char.), 147, 492
 - `\eth` (\eth math sym.), 498
 - eth (Eur. char), 509
 - eucal (pack.), 289, 290, 391, 502
 - options, 289, 396, 502
 - eufrak (pack.), 289
 - Euler Fraktur (math alphabet), 164, 184, 289, 396, 502
 - Euler Script (math alphabet), 289, 290, 396, 502
 - European
 - accents, 11, 63
 - characters, 11, 63, 505–506, 509
 - quotation marks, 509
 - European Modern (EM) fonts, 514
 - `every picture` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
 - ex (rel. unit), 411
 - examples
 - of bibliographies, 251–253, 427–429
 - of indexes, 456–458
 - of nonbreakable spaces (`\~ spacing com.`), 60
 - of top matter commands, 271–274
 - `\except` (table of contents com.), 475
 - exclamation marks (!), 7, 46
 - as float control, 251, 488
 - in `\index` commands, 459, 460, 463
 - Spanish (¡), 64, 505, 508
 - terminating sentences with, 48–51
 - `executivepaper` (doc. class opt.), 294
 - exercises, 478
 - in books, 478
 - within a section, 478
 - `\exists` (\exists math sym.), 498
 - exiting, from interactive mode, 521
 - `\exp` (exp math op.), 153, 500
 - expanding values of counters, 63, 65, 408
 - exscale (pack.), 289, 299
 - extensibility of L^AT_EX and T_EX, 31
 - Fairbairns, Robin, 513
 - `\fallingdotseq` (\fallingdotseq binary rel.), 494
 - fancyhdr (pack.), 260, 525, 528
 - FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions), 527, 529
 - `\fboxrule` (length com.), 94
 - `\fboxsep` (length com.), 94
 - `\fcolorbox` (beamer com.), 336

- fd (font def. file), 532, 533, 534
- Fear, Simon, 124
- fields, bibliographic, *see under* bib
- figure (counter), 407
- figure (float env.), 249–250, 315, 349–350
 - optional arguments of, 250, 488
 - placement of, 486, 488
- figure* (float env.), 249
- \figurename (redef. name), 380, 381
 - and hyperref package, 311
- figures, 249–250, 349
 - captions in, 478
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - commands for, 249, 478, 481
 - double-column, 249
 - forcing typesetting of, 86
 - lists of, *see also under* lists, 477–478
 - adding a line to, 478
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - numbering of, 248, 249
 - old-style, 46
 - placement of, 250, 251, 486, 488
- file formats, PDF, for graphics, 249
- file transfer protocol, *see* FTP
- file transferring
 - Dropbox, 541, 544, 548, 550
 - iTunes for iPad, 544
 - the Cloud, 548
- FileApp
 - LaTeX app for iPad, 541
- fileerr (pack.), 301
- files
 - MakeIndex log, *see* ilg
 - auxiliary, *see* aux
 - BIBTeX log, *see* blg
 - BIBTeX style, *see* bst
 - class (cls), *see under* document classes
 - command, *see* command files
 - converting from articles to presentations, 314
 - documents composed of multiple, 479–481
 - DVI, *see* DVI files
 - font definition, *see* fd
 - font metric, *see also* tfm, *see under* font metrics
 - glossary, *see* glo
 - hyperref bookmarks, *see* out
 - including in other files, 391, 480
 - index entry, *see* idx
 - list
 - of figures, *see* lof
 - of tables, *see* lot
 - listing those used by a document, 392
 - log, *see* log files
 - naming of
 - with \graphicspath command, 481
 - organization of, 479–481
 - package source, *see under* packages
 - Portable Document Format, *see* PDF
 - PostScript (PS), *see under* PostScript
 - processed index, *see* ind
 - sample, *see* sample files
 - source, *see* source files
 - start on new page with \include command, 480
 - style, *see* sty
 - tables of contents, *see* toc
 - terminating, 399, 480
- fill (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 352
- filling horizontal space, 90–91, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422
- final (doc. class opt.), 288, 294
- final preparation, of books, 484–489
- fine tuning
 - of mathematical formulas, 174–176
 - placement of root with \sqrt, 145
 - placement of text boxes, 99
- \Finv (∇ math sym.), 498
- firstarticle.tex (sample file), 24, 35, 36
- firstarticlei.idx (index entry file), 465, 466, 467
- firstarticlei.ilg (index log file), 467
- firstarticlei.ind (index proc. file), 465–467
- firstarticlei.tex (sample file), 458, 466, 467
- firstarticleiill.tex (sample file), 27
- firstpresentation.tex (sample file), 27
- fixed-size math delimiters, 150
- fixltx2e.dtx, 299
- fixltx2e.ins, 299
- fixltx2e.sty, 299, 300
- flalign (math align. env.), 196, 198, 209, 219
- \flat (\flat math sym.), 498
- fleqn (doc. class opt.), 137, 286, 295
- floats, 248–251
 - commands, 27, 248, 251
 - controls, 118, 250–251
 - environments, 117, 248–250
 - figure, 249–250, 250, 315, 349
 - figure*, 249
 - locating, 486, 488
 - table, 118, 248, 250
 - table*, 249
 - forcing typesetting of, 86
 - specifying placement of, 250, 251, 486
- floor math delimiters, 149, 499
- flush left
 - alignment of formulas, 195, 198, 200, 202, 209, 295
 - column alignment, 220, 224
 - columns in tabular environments, 119
 - setting equations, 286, 295

- flush right
 - alignment of formulas, 195, 198, 200, 202, 209
 - alignment of text, 90
 - column alignment, 220, 224
 - columns in tabular environments, 119
 - setting equations, 286, 295
- flushleft (text align. env.), **108**, 414
 - breaking lines in, 108
- flushright (text align. env.), 51, **108**, 414
 - breaking lines in, 108
- \fnssymbol (footnote counter style com.), 71
- folders
 - structure of, 479–481
- font command declarations, *see also* font commands, 75
 - for shape
 - \em, 74, 75, 77, 107, 506
 - \itshape, 74, **75**, 76–78, 107, 420, 506
 - \normalfont, **74**, 74, 107, 146, 506, 533
 - \rmfamily, 74, 107, 506
 - \scshape, 74, **75**, 107, 506
 - \sffamily, 74, 78, 107, 506
 - \slshape, 74, **75**, 77–79, 107, 506
 - \ttfamily, 74, 107, 126, 506
 - \upshape, 74, **75**, 107, 387, 420, 506
 - for weight
 - \bfseries, **55**, 57, 74, **77**, 78, 79, 107, 506
 - \mdseries, 74, **77**, 506
- font commands, *see also* font command declarations
 - and italic correction, 75, 77
 - and *MakeIndex*, 75
 - for selecting fonts using family names, 532
 - for series
 - \textmd, 74, **77**, 506
 - for shape
 - \emph, 10, 51, 74, **75**, 325, 506
 - \textit, 74, **75**, 325, 506
 - \textnormal, **74**, 74, 146, 506
 - \textrm, 74, 289, 506
 - \textsc, 74, **75**, 506
 - \textsf, 74, 506
 - \textsl, 74, **75**, 506
 - \texttt, 10, 60, 74, 506
 - \textup, 74, **75**, 506
 - \upn, 140
 - for size
 - \footnotesize, **77**, 78, 507
 - \Huge, **77**, 78, 507
 - \huge, **77**, 78, 507
 - \LARGE, **77**, 78, 507
 - \Large, **77**, 78, 78, 507
 - \large, **77**, 78, 507
- \larger, **78**
- \normalsize, **77**, 78, 507
- \scriptsize, **77**, 78, 507
- \SMALL, **77**, 78, 507
- \Small, **77**, 78, 507
- \small, **77**, 78, 507
- \Tiny, **77**, 78, 507
- \tiny, **77**, 78, 507
- for weight
 - \textbf, 10, 57, 74, **77**, 147, 289, 325, 506
- low-level, 79
- math, *see* math font commands
- obsolete, **79**
- orthogonality of, **78–79**
- two-letter (obs. \LaTeX 2.09), and italic correction, 79
- using in math environments, 146
- font encodings, **61**, 62
 - koi8-u, 536
 - LY1, 533, 534
 - OT1, 532
 - T1, 66, 509, 535
- font environments
 - for series
 - bfseries, 107
 - for shape
 - em, 107
 - itshape, 107
 - rmfamily, 107
 - scshape, 107
 - sffamily, 107
 - slshape, 107
 - ttfamily, 107
 - upshape, 107
 - for weight
 - bfseries, 107
- font families, document, *see* document font families
- font metrics files, 306, **516**, 532, 533
- font series, 73, **77**
 - command declarations for, *see* command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font shapes
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
 - sans serif, 73
 - serif, 73
- font substitution, 78, 306, 485

- warning messages, 78
- font weight, 73
 - command declarations for, *see under* font command declarations
 - command declarations
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - environments for, *see under* font environments
- font width, 73
- fontenc (pack.), 533, 535, 536
- \fontfamily (font selection com.), 532
- fonts
 - AMSFonTS, 288, **289–290**
 - document class options for, 288
 - obtaining, 528
 - PostScript versions of, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
 - technical support for, 529
 - updates to, 520
 - bitmap, 531
 - blackboard bold, 165, **184**, 396
 - bold math, 168, **183**, 183, **185**, 502
 - calligraphic, 169, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 - commands, *see under* font commands *and* font command declarations
 - Computer Modern, *see* Computer Modern
 - Courier (typewriter shape), 305, 532
 - encodings, *see* font encodings
 - Euler Fraktur, 164, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 - Euler Script, **289**, 290, 396, 502
 - European Modern (EM), *see* European Modern fonts
 - for text in math mode, 146
 - Helvetica, 74, 532
 - including in PDF files, 306
 - including in PostScript files, 305
 - Lucida Bright, 531, 534
 - math, 182–184
 - size of, 186
 - monospaced, 72, 73
 - names of
 - L^AT_EX 2.09, 301
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 532
 - PostScript, *see under* PostScript
 - proportional, 72, 73
 - proprietary
 - using in PDF files, 306
 - using in PostScript files, 305
 - samples, 301
 - selecting, 72–80
 - with \fontfamily command, 532
 - with \selectfont command, 79, 532
 - shapes, *see* font shapes
 - size of, 40, 73, 78, 507, **77–507**
 - document class options for, 285, 294
 - sources for, 534
 - STIX, 177
 - substitution of, 78, 306, 485
 - Times, 74, 532–533
 - typewriter style, 72, 73
 - weight, *see* font weight
 - width, *see* font width
- fontsmpl (pack.), 301
- fonttbl.tex (sample file), 62, 118
- footers, page, 258–260
- \footnote, 71
- footnote (counter), 407
- footnotes, 71–72
 - and double-column documents, 301
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - in minipage environments, 96
 - indicated by symbols, 71
 - on title pages, 72
 - unmarked, 269
- \footnotesize, **77**, 78, 507
- \forall (math sym.), 498
- forcing
 - floats to typeset, 86
 - indentation, 84
- formats
 - L^AT_EX, 516
 - T_EX
 - creating with initex, 515
 - files read by virtex, 515
 - Plain T_EX, 515
- formatting of documents, determined by document classes, 45
- formulanote.tex (sample file), 12–14, 38–39
- formulas, 6, 13
 - adjusted, 198, **220–230**
 - flush left and right, 202
 - aligning, **21–23**, 195–198, **207–220**, 230, 286, 514
 - multiline, 205
 - rules for, 205, 208
 - text in, 213–215
 - annotating, 212
 - boxed, *see under* boxes
 - breaking into multiple lines, 22, **205**
 - displayed, 41
 - rules for, 205
 - commas in, 139
 - components of, 14–18, 140–146
 - building using, 161–163
 - displayed, *see* displayed math environments, *see* displayed math environments
 - gallery, 164–170
 - grouping, 198, **199–200**
 - inline, *see* inline math environments
 - multiline, **21–23**, 41
 - splitting, 200–202

- numbering, *see under* equation
- specifying fonts for, 146
- foundries, type, 532, 534
- `\frac` ($\frac{x}{y}$), 14, 15, 53, **141**, 169, 187
- fractions, 14, 15, 53, **141**, 169
 - continued, 187
 - displayed, **141**, 169
 - generalized, 191–192
 - inline, 141
- fragile commands, 58
 - protecting, **58**, 240, 241, 472, 477
- `frame` (beamer env.), 28–30, 315, 316, 331
- `\framebox`, 93
- frames, *see also under* presentations, **315**, 345
 - environments of, 315
 - outline (table of contents), 316
 - titles, 28–30, 315, 345
- `\frametitle` (beamer com.), 28–30, 315, 316, 332
- `\frenchspacing` (spacing com.), 51
- Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 527, 529
- front matter, 473
 - numbering of chapters in, 473
 - of AMS documents, 274
 - of books, **475–477**
- `\frontmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\frown` (\curvearrowright binary rel.), 493
- `ftnright` (pack.), 301
- FTP (File Transfer Protocol), 526

- `\Game` (\mathbb{G} math sym.), 498
- `\Gamma` (Γ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\gamma` (γ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `gather` (disp. math env.), 41, 196, 198, **199–200**, 206, 219, 485
 - page breaks in, 230
 - rules for, 199
- `gather*` (disp. math env.), 199
- `gathered` (subsid. math env.), 198, 215–217, 219
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231
- `\gcd` (gcd math op.), 153, 500
- `\ge` (\geq binary rel.), 493
- generalized
 - commands, *see* custom commands
 - fractions, 191–192
- `\genfrac` (math com.), **191–192**
- geometry (pack.), 41, 260
- `\geq` (\geq binary rel.), 493
- `\geqq` (\geqq binary rel.), 494
- `\geqslant` (\geqslant binary rel.), 494
- `german` (opt. of babel pack.), 536
- `german.tex` (sample file), 536
- `\gg` (\gg binary rel.), 493
- `ggamsart.tpl` (template file), 285

- `\ggg` (\ggg binary rel.), 494
- `\gimel` (\aleph Hebrew char.), 147, 491
- `glo` (glossary files), 470, 518
- global commands, *see under* scope
- glossaries, 470
 - as a custom list environment, 421
 - auxiliary file (`glo`), 470, 518
 - defining, 470, 518
- `\glossary` (glossary com.), 470, 518
- `glue`, **383**, 416, **517**, 517
 - horizontal, 517
 - parameters of, 517
 - vertical, *see also under* vertical spacing, 517
- glyphs, *see also* characters
 - measuring, 517
- `\gnapprox` (\gtrapprox neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gneq` (\gtrneq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gneqq` (\gtrneqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\gnsim` (\gtrsim neg. binary rel.), 495
- Google, 470, 526
- Goossens, Michel, xxxi, 558, 560
- graphics
 - commands for, 250, **250**, 315, 330, 350–353, 481
 - in presentations, 330
- formats
 - PDF, 249
- including in documents, 249–250, 349–364
- InkSpace, 27
- scaling, 250
- `tikzname` (pack.), 350
- TikZ (graphics pack.)
 - `tikzpicture` (graphics env.), 350
- TikZ (pack.), 27, 249, 350
 - above com., 357
 - align com., 357
 - arc com., 355
 - around com., 359
 - arrow com., 361–363
 - below com., 354, **357**
 - center com., 358
 - circle com., 351–355, 359
 - colors, 360
 - components, 353–357
 - `controls` com., 356
 - curves, 356–357
 - dashed com., 360–362
 - dotted com., 356, 360
 - `\draw` com., **350–352**
 - ellipse com., 355, 358
 - `end angle` com., 355
 - `every picture` com., 353
 - fill com., 352
 - grid com., 350, 352
 - in com., 356, 361

- labels, 352, 357
- left com., 357, 362
- line width com., 351, 353, 360
- out com., 356, 361
- path attributes, 360–363
- radius com., 351
- rectangle com., 355, 358, 359
- right com., 357, 362
- rotate com., 358
- scale com., 359
- semithick com., 360
- shift com., 359
- start angle com., 355
- thick com., 357, 360
- thin com., 360
- `\tikzset` com., 353
- transformations, 358–360
- ultra thick com., 360
- ultra thin com., 360
- very thick com., 356, 360, 361
- very thin com., 360
- xscale com., 359
- yscale com., 359
- `graphics` (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 299, 527
- `graphics` (pack.), 300
- `\graphicspath` (`graphics` com.), 479
- `graphicx` (pack.), 26, 176, 238, 249–250, 288, 513
- grave (``` grave text accent), 46, 63, 506
- `\grave` (\grave{x} math accent), 158, 502
- greater than (`>`)
 - as binary relation, 493
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- Greek letters, 147, 148, 165, 393–396, 492
- Greenwade, George D., 83
- `grid` (TikZ `graphics` pack. com.), 350, 352
- grouping
 - chapters into parts, 472
 - equations, 190–191
 - formulas, 198, **199–200**
- groups
 - of equations, 190–191
 - cross-referencing, 205–207
 - labels for, 191
 - numbering, 205–207
 - of tokens, 517
- `\gtrapprox` (\gtrapprox binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrdot` (\gtrdot binary rel.), 494
- `\gtreqless` (\gtreqless binary rel.), 494
- `\gtreqqlless` (\gtreqqlless binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrless` (\gtrless binary rel.), 494
- `\gtrsim` (\gtrsim binary rel.), 494
- guillemets, 509
- `\guillemotleft` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- `\guillemotright` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- `\guilsingleft` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- `\guilsingright` (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- Gurari, Eitan, 558
- `\gvertneqq` (\gvertneqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\H` double acute text accent (H), 63, 506
- Hahn, Harley, 555, 559
- handout (beamer doc. class opt.), 346
- `\hangafter`
 - T_EX command, 382
 - length command, 84
- `\hangindent` (length com.), **84**
- hanging indentation, **84**, 129
- Hargreaves, Kathryn A., 555, 557
- Harrison, Michael A., 455, 469, 557
- Hart, Horace, 555, 559
- `\hat` (\hat{x} math accent), 16, 158, 502
- `\hbar` (\hbar math sym.), 498
- `\hdotsfor` (space fill com.), **169**, 222, 224
 - optional argument of, 222
- headers, page, *see* running heads
- headings (page style), 258
- `\headtoname` (redef. name), 381
- `\heartsuit` (\heartsuit math sym.), 498
- Hebrew letters, 147, 491
- `\height` (length com.), 92, **93**, 96
- height, of text boxes, 93, 94, 96, 97, 413, 413
- Helvetica (sans serif font), 74, 532
- `\hfill` (space fill com.), 90, 110, 115, 422
- `\Hfootnotename` (`hyperref` redef. name), 311
- `\hfuzz` (`\hbox` warning adjustment), 81
- `hline` (pack.), 124, 301
- hierarchy of structural commands, 240, 241, 472
- history of \mathcal{A} , \mathcal{M} , \mathcal{S} -L^AT_EX, AMS-T_EX, T_EX, and L^AT_EX, 511–515
- `\hline` (table com.), 119, 121
- Høgholm, Morten, 193
- `\hom` (hom math op.), 153, 500
- `\hookleftarrow` (\hookleftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\hookrightarrow` (\hookrightarrow math arrow), 497
- horizontal lines (rules), in `tabular` environments, 119, 121
- horizontal spacing, 302
 - commands
 - `_` (interword space), 9, **50**, 54, 86, 174, 510
 - `\!` (negthinspace), 166, **174**, 174, 503, 510
 - `\,` (thinspace), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510
 - `\:` (medspace), 174, 503, 510
 - `\;` (thickspace), 174, 503, 510
 - `\@.` (intersentence space), 510
 - `\dotfill` (fill com.), 90
 - `\frenchspacing`, 51

- `\dotsfor` (fill com.), **169**, 222, 224
- `\hfill` (fill com.), 90, 110, 115, 422
- `\hrulefill` (fill com.), 90, 98
- `\hspace`, **86**, 126
- `\hspace*`, 40, 53, 87–88
- `\medspace`, *174*, *503*, *510*
- `\mspace`, **174**, *174*, *503*
- `\negmedspace`, *174*, *503*, *510*
- `\negthickspace`, *174*, *503*, *510*
- `\negthinspace`, *166*, **174**, *174*, *503*, *510*
- `\nobreakspace`, 60
- `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
- `\phantom`, **87**, 173, **175–176**, 211, 413
- `\quad`, 86, 90, *174*, *174*, 212, *503*, *510*
- `\quad`, 18, 86, 90, 138, *174*, *174*, 212, *503*, *510*
- `\thickspace`, *174*, *503*, *510*
- `\thinspace`, 16, 51, 59, *174*, *174*, *503*, *510*
- to avoid using, 483
- `\xspace`, 372–373
- in math, **13**, **138–139**, **171–176**, 221, 224
- in text, 9, 40, **48–51**, **86–88**, 98, 110, 422, *503*, *510*
- intersentence, 9, 48–51
- interword space (`_`), 9, 48–51, 54, 60, 86, 388, 433
- preventing removal of, 87
- howpublished (BIB \TeX database field), 431
- `\href` (hyperref com.), 310
- `\hrulefill` (space fill com.), 90, 98
- `\hslash` (\hbar math sym.), 498
- `\hspace` (spacing com.), **86**, 126
- `\hspace*` (spacing com.), 40, 53, 87–88
- HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol), 526
- `\Huge` (font size com.), **77**, **78**, *507*
- `\huge` (font size com.), **77**, **78**, *507*
- `\hyperlink` (beamer com.), 331
- hyperlinks, 307
 - in PDF files, **307–311**
 - increasing size of, 310
 - suppressing, 310
 - to bibliographic citations, 308
 - to Web sites, 310–311
 - in presentations, 331–335, 345, 346
 - putting bookmarks in documents, 309
 - to bibliographic citations, 309, 309
 - with hyperref pack., 308, 309, 307–309
- hyperref (pack.), 307–311
 - bookmarks file (out), 309
 - commands
 - `\autoref`, 308, 308, 310, *311*
 - `\pageref`, 310
 - `\ref`, 310
 - `\urladdr`, 310
 - `\WriteBookmarks`, 309
 - documentation for, 308
 - options, **308**
 - `bookmarks=true`, 308
 - `colorlinks`, 308, **308**, 309
 - `dvipdf`, 307
 - `dvipdfm`, 307
 - `dvipdfmx`, 307
 - `dvips`, 307
 - `dvipsone`, 307
 - `dviwindo`, 307
 - `hypertex`, 307
 - `pagebackref`, 308, 309, 309
 - `pdftex`, 307
 - `ps2pdf`, 307
 - `tex4ht`, 307
 - `textures`, 307
 - `vtex`, 307
- hypertex (opt. of hyperref pack.), 307
- Hypertext Transfer Protocol, *see* HTTP
- hyphen.tex, 65
- hyphenation, **65–68**, 517
 - determined by optional hyphen, 12, 66
 - displaying, 67
 - \LaTeX 's algorithm, 63, 65
 - of German text, 536
 - of hyphenated words, 11
 - of words with accents, 66
 - preventing, 66–67, 91
 - rules for English, 68
 - specifying, 66
 - tables, 515
- `\hyphenation`, 65, 66
- hyphens, **11**, 46, **59**
 - key, 7, 47
 - optional, 12, 66, **66**, 80
 - unbreakable, 67
- `\i` (i dotless i), **63**, 63, 506
- `\idotsint` ($\int \dots \int$ large math op.), **145**, *156*, *501*
- idx (index aux. file), 465, 466, 467, 470
- `\iff` (\iff math arrow), 369, 497
- `\ignorespacesafterend` (spacing com.), 388
- `\iiint` (\iiint large math op.), **145**, *156*, *501*
- `\iint` (\iint large math op.), **145**, *156*, *501*
- `\iint` (\iint large math op.), **145**, *156*, *501*
- ilg (*MakeIndex* log files), 467
- illustrations, 248, **249–250**, **349**
 - commands for, 481
 - double-column, 249
 - Encapsulated PostScript (EPS), 479
 - `graphicx` (pack.), 238, 249
 - placement of, 87, 251
 - Portable Document Format (PDF), 249, 479

- preparation of, 485
- sample files, 315
- scaling, 250
- with `graphicx` (pack.), 26
- with the `picture` environment, 249
- Illustrator, Adobe, *see under* Adobe Illustrator
- `\Im` (\Im math sym.), 498
- `\imath` (*i* math sym.), 498
- iMazing
 - \LaTeX app for iPad, 541
- `\in` (\in binary rel.), 493
- `in` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356, 361
- `in` (inch abs. unit), 11, 80, 90, 92, 95, 411
- `inbibl.tpl` (sample file), 253
- `INBOOK` (bibl. entry type), 430, **441**
- `inch` (in abs. unit), 11, 80, 90, 92, 95, 411
- `\include` (inclusion com.), 399, 479, **480**
 - and auxiliary files, 518
 - and counters, 408
 - errors with, 480
 - files start on new pages, 480
- `\includegraphics` (graphics com.), **250**, 315, 481
 - file extensions in, 250
 - in presentations, 330
- `\includeonly` (preamble inclusion com.), 408, 479, **480**
- including
 - files in other files, 391, 399
 - fonts
 - in PDF files, 306
 - in PostScript files, 305
 - graphics in documents, 249–250, 349–364
- `INCOLLECTION` (bibl. entry type), 430, **437**
- incrementing counters, 406
- `ind` (proc. index files), **465**, 466, 467, 488
- `\indent` (indentation com.), 84
- indentation
 - hanging, **84**, 129
 - in `multline` and `multline*` environments, 201
 - in source files, 163
 - of environment bodies, 139
 - of first lines of paragraphs, 84, 301, **411**
 - of subformulas, 205
 - of text, 83–84
 - customizing, 88
 - forcing, 84
 - preventing, 84
- `indentfirst` (pack.), 301
- `\index` (indexing com.), 375, 456, **456**, **459–465**
 - at signs (@) in, 461, 462
 - defining cross-references in indexes with, 463
 - double quote (") in, 463
 - encapsulators, 460
 - exclamation marks (!) in, 459, 460, 463
 - modifiers, 460
 - page ranges in, 460
 - placement of commands, **464**, 487
 - spaces in argument of, 467–468
 - syntax of, 464
 - vertical line (|) in, 460, 463
- indexes, 299, 458, **455–470**
 - appear in back matter, 456
 - auxiliary files (`idx`), 465, **467**
 - cross-references in, 463
 - defining, *see* indexing entries
 - sorting, 461–462
 - stored in `idx` files, 465, **467**
 - log files (`ilg`), 467
 - main entries, 257, 455, **459**
 - multiple, 469
 - placement of, **456**, 467
 - processed files (`ind`), **465–467**, 488
 - processing, 465–467
 - sample, 458, 456–458
 - simple, 257
 - special characters in, 463
 - subentries, 257, 455, **459**
 - subsubentries, 257, 455, **460**
 - syntax of, 464
 - typesetting, 465–467
 - using `showidx`, 459
 - vertical space in, 257, 455
- indexing, *see also* `MakeIndex`, 455–470
 - commands for, 257, 375, **455–465**, 467
 - CTAN systems for, 527
 - entries
 - main, 257, 455, **459**
 - subentries, 257, 455, **459**
 - subsubentries, 257, 455, **460**
 - environment for, 257, 414, 455, 465
 - page ranges, 460–461
 - placement of commands for, 464
 - processed files (`ind`), 488
 - processed index files (`ind`), **465–467**
 - rules for, 467–469
 - typesetting entries in margins, 299
 - with AMS document classes, 456
 - with custom commands, 375
- `\indexname` (redef. name), 381
- `\indexspace` (indexing com.), 455
- `\inf` (inf math op.), 153, 287, 500
- information, top matter
 - AMS specific, 269–270
 - AMS subject classifications, 269
 - keywords, 270, 285
 - author, 265–269, 292
 - addresses, 266, 284

- current addresses, 267, 271
- e-mail addresses, 267, 270, 284
- Internet addresses, 268, 270, 284
- research support, 268, 270, 284, 292
- for articles, 263–274
 - author names, 265, 284, 292
 - dedications, 265
 - title, 263, 285, 292
 - translator, 264
- `\infty` (∞ math sym.), 38, 498
- `initex` (T_EX program), 515
- initials
 - periods in, 50–51
 - typographical rules for, 51
- `\injlim` (inj lim math op.), 153
- InkSpace graphics, 27
- inline
 - fractions, 141
 - math formulas, *see* inline math environments
 - tables, 117
- inline math environments, 12, 41, **136**
 - `\(` (start math mode), 13, 58, 136
 - `\)` (end math mode), 13, 58, 136
 - act as special braces, 136, 137
 - and `$`, 12, 13, 41, 58, 136, **136**
 - display-style binomials in, 141
 - font size of, 186
 - math, 136
 - matrices in, 223–224
 - size of delimiters in, 152
- INPROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 430, 436–437
- `\input` (inclusion com.), 515
- `inputenc` (pack.), 535
- `\institute` (beamer com.), 314
- institution (BIBT_EX database field), 431
- instructions to L^AT_EX, 6, 9, 24, 35, 47, 51, 236, 240, 521
- `\int` (\int large math op.), **16**, 156, 501
- integrals, 16, 144–145, 287
- integration of fonts into L^AT_EX, 513, 531
- interactive mode, 97, 381–383, **521**
- `\intercal` (\intercal math op.), 496
- intercolumn spacing, 195, 197, 207, 208
 - in aligned math environments, 212, 216
 - in `tabular` environments, 119
- interline spacing, 41, 152, 231
 - adjusting, **79**, 82–83, 88
- international T_EX users groups, 525
- Internet, 268, 310, 423, 526
 - addresses, 268, 311
 - in top matter (`\urladdr` com.), 268, 284, 310
 - and L^AT_EX, 525
 - browsers, **526**, 528
 - FTP transfers, 526
 - viewing PDF files in, 306
 - documents in PostScript format, 305
 - finding L^AT_EX and T_EX related material on, 525
 - finding L^AT_EX- and T_EX-related material on, 526
 - hyperlinks in PDF documents, 307, 310
 - L^AT_EX and T_EX resources on, 526, 529
 - putting L^AT_EX documents on, 305–311
 - types of sites for downloading files, 526
- intersentence spaces (`\@.`), 9, 48–51, 510
 - and `\frenchspacing`, 51
 - and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
- `\intertext` (text in math com.), 213–215
- interword space, 9, 48–51, 60, 388, 433
 - and `\frenchspacing`, 51
 - and `\nonfrenchspacing`, 51
 - command (`_`), 9, **50**, 54, 86, 174, 510
- `intlimits` (opt. of amsmath pack.), 287
- invalid characters, 7, 47
- invisible boxes, *see* struts
- invoking
 - custom commands, 370
 - delimited commands, 383
 - proclamations, 35, **109**, 112, 330, 388
- ι (ι Greek char.), 147, 492
- iPad
 - the Cloud, 539
 - iTunes file transferring, 544
 - keyboards, 547, 549, 551
 - L^AT_EX apps, **541**, 540–541, 551
 - TeX Writer, 540, 550–551
 - Texpad, 550
 - Latex apps L^AT_EX apps
 - Texpad, 540, 544
 - printers, 543
 - printing apps, 543
 - printing L^AT_EX files, 543
 - the Cloud, 548
 - typesetting source files, 548, 551
- ISBN (bibl. com.), 431
- `\it` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- italic correction, **76–77**, 510
 - and commas, 76
 - and `\em`, 77
 - and font commands, 75, 77
 - and `\itshape`, 76, 77
 - and periods, 76
 - and `\slshape`, 77
 - suppressing, 76–77
 - with two-letter font commands, 79
- italics
 - bold math, 184
 - font shape, 10, 19, 51, 72, 74, **75**, 78, **107**, 420, 506

- in math mode, **183**, 183, 502
 - math font, 183
- `\item` (list item com.), 40–107, 246
 - and square brackets, 106
 - in simple indexes, 257, 455
 - optional arguments of, 104, **106**, 416, 417
- `\itemindent` (length com.), 415, 416
- `itemize` (text list env.), 40, 102, **103–104**, 246
- `\Itemname` (hyperref redef. name), 311
- `\itemsep` (length com.), **416**, 420
- `\itshape` (font shape com. dec.), 74, **75**, 78, 107, 420, 506
 - and italic correction, 76, 77
- `itshape` (font shape env.), 107
- iTunes file transferring
 - iPad, 544
- `\j` (j dotless j), **63**, 63, 506
- Jackowski, Bogusław, 514
- Java, with `BIBTEX`, 452
- JavaScript, 306
- JBibTeXManager bibl. manager, 452
- Jeffrey, Alan, 513
- Jensen, Frank, 410
- `\jmath` (j math sym.), 498
- `\Join` (\bowtie binary rel.), 493
- Jones, David M., 453, 514
- `journal` (`BIBTEX` database field), 431
- Jr., in bibliographic entries, 432
- justification of text
 - right, 10, 51
- `\k` (ogonek Eur. accent), 509
- `\kappa` (κ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\ker` (ker math op.), 153, 500
- Kern, Uwe, 313, 336, 337, 559
- kerning, 516, 517
- `key` (`BIBTEX` database field), 431
- keyboard, 7–48, 535
- keyboards for iPad, 547, 549, 551
- keys, 12
 - alphanumeric, 7
 - Enter, *see* Return key
 - Esc (escape), 47, 369
 - letter, **46**, 7–46
 - math symbol, 47
 - math typing, 12
 - modifier, 46, 47
 - number, 46
 - prohibited, 7, 47
 - Return, 7, 9, 47
 - space bar, 7, 9, 47, 313, 321
 - special, 7, 12, **47**, 60
 - Tab, 7, 9, 47
- keys, sorting (in `\index` commands), 461–462
 - case sensitivity of, 468
- `\keywords` (top matter com.), 285
 - rules for using, 270
- `keywords` (bibl. com.), 431
- `\keywordsname` (redef. name), 381
- `\kill` (tabbing com.), 125, 126
- Knuth, Donald E., xxvii, 31, 511–513, 515, 555, 559
- koi8-u (font encoding), 536
- L, slashed (\mathbb{L} , \mathbb{l}), 64, 505
- `\label` (cross-ref. com.), **19**, 22, 37, 70, 139, 203, 219, 240, **243**, 247, 316
 - and simple indexes, 257
 - arguments of, 245
 - assigning counters to, 409
 - in `table` environments, 27, 248
 - placement of commands, 487
 - rules for, 245
 - showing in margin, 246, 301
 - with `\`, 203
- labels
 - for `\bibitem` commands, 253
 - for bibliographic items, 105
 - for equations, 19, 244
 - for groups of equations, 191
 - in list environments, 105, **105**
 - of items in a list environment, 415, **416**, 417
 - setting with `\label`, 19, 243
 - TikZ (graphics pack.), 352
 - TikZ graphics, 357
- `\labelsep` (length com.), 415, 416
- `\labelwidth` (length com.), 415, 416
- `\Lambda` (Λ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\lambda` (λ Greek char.), 147, 492
- Lamport, Leslie, xxvii, 411, 512, 513, 516, 554, 559
- `\land` (\wedge math op.), 496
- `landscape` (doc. class opt.), 295
- `\langle` (\langle math delimiter), 149, **150**, 499
- `language` (`BIBTEX` database field), 431
- `\LARGE` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- `\Large` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 78, 507
- large
 - math delimiters
 - in `array` subsidiary math environment, 301
 - operators, 16, **18**, 144, 156, **155–157**, 501
 - limits of, **155**, 287
 - sizing of math delimiters with, 151
 - symbols, 101, 215–217
- `\large` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- `\larger` (font size com.), **78**
- `LATEX`, 31, **511**

- and the Internet, 525
- apps for iPad, 540
- counters, 407
- customizing, 367–424
- distribution, 62, 69, **298–302**, 515, **516**, 519, 520, 527
 - components of, 291–296
 - directories, 246, **298–299**, 300, 528, 535
 - on CTAN, 528
- document classes, *see under* document classes
- document structure, 235–260, 473
- documentation for, 299
 - packages, 300
- documents, 235–260
 - printing and viewing, 517
 - putting on the Internet, 305–311
- files created by, 518–520
- font substitution, 78, 306, 485
- formats, 516
- history of, 511–515
- implementations, 6, 32, 177, 299, 306, 525
 - technical support for, 528
 - UNIX, 467
- inner workings of, 515–520
- iPad apps, **541**, 540–541
- layers of, 515–516
- localization of, 63, 535–536
- numbers stored by, 63–65
- overview of, 511–523
- printing files from iPad, 543
- release dates of, 69, 239, 519
- resources on the Internet, 529
- source files, *see under* source files
- spacing in text, 9
- structure of, 31–32
- updates to, 178, 519
- using, **32**, **33**
- versions of, 519–520
 - specifying, in documents, 69, 238, 391, 519
- writing books with, 471–489
- \LaTeX apps
 - for iPad, 551
- \LaTeX (\LaTeX logo com.), 6, 63
- \LaTeX 2.09, 391, 512–514
 - font names, 301
 - two-letter font commands, 78, **79**
- $\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$, *see* \LaTeX
- `latex.ltx`, **299**
- $\LaTeX 3$, **513**, 514, 528
- \LaTeXe ($\LaTeX 2_{\epsilon}$ logo com.), 63
- \LaTeXe (\LaTeXe logo com.), 514
- `latexsym` (pack.), 164, 237, 282, 288, 299
- layers, of \LaTeX and \TeX , 515–516
- layout
 - of a list, 415
 - of Computer Modern typewriter font, 61, 62
 - of pages, 31, **258–260**, 301
- `\layout` (page-layout diagram com.), 258
- layout (pack.), 258, 301
- `\lbrace` (`{` math delimiter), 41, 149, 499
- `\lbrack` (`[` math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\lceil` (`⌈` math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\ldots` (`...`)
 - in math, 41, 144, 170
 - in text, **16**
- `\le` (`≤` binary rel.), 493
- `\leadsto` (`↪` math arrow), 497
- `\left` (math delim.), 41, **149–150**, 152, 168, 224
 - blank, 150, 166
 - must be balanced, 150, 204
- `left` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 362
- left double quote (`"`)
 - text symbol, 59, 64, 508
 - typing, 9
- left single quote (`'`)
 - key, 7, 9, 46, **59**
 - text symbol, **59**, 509
- `\left(` (`(` math delimiter), 15–17, 41, 147, 149, 150, 168, 204, 223
- `\left.` (blank math delim.), 150, 166
- `\left<` (`<` math delimiter), **150**
- `\left[` (`[` math delimiter), 15, 147, 165
- `\Leftarrow` (`⇐` math arrow), 497
- `\leftarrow` (`←` math arrow), 368, 378, 497
- `\leftarrowtail` (`↵` math arrow), 497
- `\leftharpoondown` (`↷` math arrow), 497
- `\leftharpoonup` (`↶` math arrow), 497
- `\leftleftarrows` (`⇌` math arrow), 497
- `\leftmargin` (length com.), 415, **416**, 419
- `\Leftrightarrow` (`⇔` math arrow), 497
- `\leftrightarrow` (`↔` math arrow), 497
- `\leftrightharpoons` (`⇆` math arrow), 497
- `\leftrightsquigarrow` (`↷↶` math arrow), 497
- `\leftroot` (root-adjustment com.), 145, 146
- `\leftthreetimes` (`\times` math op.), 496
- `\left|` (`|` math delimiter), 17, 150, 164, 173, 175
- legacy
 - document classes, 102, 237, 242, 253, 262, 290, 293, **291–302**, 516
 - documents, 307
 - environments, 107, 127–129, 414
 - quotation, 128
 - quote, 127
 - verse, 128
- `legacy-article.tex` (sample file), 292, 293
- `legalpaper` (doc. class opt.), 69, 286, 294
- Lehman, Philipp, 453

- length commands, 92, 93, 260, 406, **410–414**
 - and boxes, 413
 - arithmetic with, 301, 412
 - `\baselineskip`, 79, 85
 - `\baselinestretch`, 83
 - defining new, 411
 - `\depth`, 92, **93**, 96
 - `\fboxrule`, 94
 - `\fboxsep`, 94
 - `\hangafter`, 84
 - `\hangindent`, **84**
 - `\height`, 92, **93**, 96
 - in list environments, 414–416
 - `\itemindent`, 415, 416
 - `\itemsep`, 416, 420
 - `\labelsep`, 415, 416
 - `\labelwidth`, 415, 416
 - `\leftmargin`, 415, **416**, 419
 - `\listparindent`, 415, 416, **422**
 - `\marginparpush`, 411
 - `\marginparwidth`, 97
 - `\medskipamount`, 382, **414**
 - `\multlinegap`, 201
 - `\oddsidemargin`, 260
 - `\overfullrule`, 80
 - `\parindent`, **411**, 422
 - `\parsep`, 415, **416**, 420, 422
 - `\parskip`, **411**, 415, 416, 422, 483
 - `\partopsep`, 416
 - `\rightmargin`, 415, **416**, 419
 - setting, 84, 97, **412–413**
 - `\textwidth`, 260, 406, **411**
 - `\topsep`, 415, **416**
 - `\totalheight`, 92, **93**, 94, 96
 - `\width`, 92, **93**, 96
- lengths, rubber, *see* rubber lengths
- `\leq` (\leq binary rel.), 493
- `leqno` (doc. class opt.), **286**, 295
- `\leqq` (\leq binary rel.), 494
- `\leqslant` (\leq binary rel.), 494
- less than ($<$)
 - as binary relation, 493
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- `\lessapprox` (\lesssim binary rel.), 494
- `\lessdot` (\lessdot binary rel.), 494
- `\lesseqgtr` (\lesseqgtr binary rel.), 494
- `\lesseqqgtr` (\lesseqqgtr binary rel.), 494
- `\lessgtr` (\lessgtr binary rel.), 494
- `\lesssim` (\lesssim binary rel.), 494
- `letter` (doc. class), 296–298, 516
- `letter` (letter env.), 296–298
 - argument of, 297
 - breaking lines in, 297
 - errors with, 297
- letter keys, **46**, 7–46
- `letter.tex` (sample file), 296–298
- `letterpaper` (doc. class opt.), 286, 294
- letters
 - counter style, 408
 - Greek, 147, 148, 165, 393–396, 492
 - Hebrew, 147, 491
- Levy, Silvio, 555, 560
- `\lfloor` (\lfloor math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\lg` (lg math op.), 153, 500
- `\lhd` (\lhd math op.), 496
- ligatures, **62**
 - suppressing, **62**, 165, 369
- `\lim` (lim math op.), 153, 287, 500
- `\liminf` (lim inf math op.), 153, 500
- limits
 - as subscripts, **16**, **144**, 153–155, 165, 166, 286, 380
 - as superscripts, **16**, **144**, 155, 165, 286
 - large operators with, 16, 18, 144, 155, **155**, 156, 287, 501
 - multiline, 157
 - operators with, 153, 153, 287, 500
 - placement of, 287
- `\limits` (limit-control com.), **144**, 155
- `\limsup` (lim sup math op.), 153, 500
- line boxes, *see under* boxes
- line ending characters, 47–49, 52, 68, 86
 - commenting out, 68, 69, 464
 - translation of, 47
- line numbers, in error messages, 137, 138
- line segments, TikZ graphics, 354
- line width (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351, 353, 360
- `\linebreak` (line breaking com.), 486, 487
- `\linebreak` (line-breaking com.), **81**, 82
 - optional arguments of, 83
- lines
 - adding to
 - lists of figures and tables, 478
 - tables of contents, 475–476, 489
 - blank
 - in bibliographies, 309
 - in displayed math environments, 37, 137, 140, 203
 - in inline math environments, 137
 - in text environments, 41, 102
 - in top matter commands, 263
 - in `verbatim` environments, 130
 - terminating paragraphs with, 9, 41, **48**, 83, 102, 128, 309
 - breaking, **81**
 - preventing, 83
 - with `\`, 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345

- distance between, 88
 - adjusting, 98
- filling with space or dots, **90–91**, 98, 110, 169, 221, 224, 422
- separating
 - with `\`, 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297, 345
 - with `\linebreak`, **81**, 82, 486, 487
- stretchable, 160
- terminating in TikZ, 351
- too wide warnings, 11
- wrapping, 68
- lines (rules)
 - horizontal
 - filling lines with, 90, 98
 - in tabular environments, 119, 121
 - intersecting in tables, 124, **301**
 - vertical
 - in CD environments, 229
 - in tabular environments, 119
- links, hyper, *see* hyperlinks
- `list` (list text env.), 40, 102, 414, 415, **416–422**
 - arguments of, 417
 - length commands in, 414–416
 - using counters with, 418
- list text environments, 40, **102–107**
 - description, **104**
 - enumerate, **102**, 107
 - in proclamations, 110
 - itemize, 40, **103**
 - list, 40, 102
 - mixing, 106
 - nesting, 105
 - rules for, 104
 - trivlist, 422
- `\listfigurename` (redef. name), 380, 381
- `\listfiles` (file list com.), 392, 519, **520**
- listing files used by a document, 392, 520
- listings (pack.), 127
- `\listoffigures` (front matter com.), **478**, 519
- `\listoftables` (front matter com.), **477**, 519
- `\listparindent` (length com.), 415, 416, **422**
- lists
 - cross-referencing items in, 103, 107
 - custom
 - and counters, 418
 - defining, 414–422
 - environments for, *see* list text environments, *see* list text environments
 - in presentations, 327–329
 - of figures, 477–478
 - adding a line to, 478
 - auxiliary file (`lof`), **478**, 488, **519**
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - of tables, 118, **477–478**
 - adding a line to, 478
 - auxiliary file (`lot`), **477**, 488, **519**
 - fragile commands in, 58
- `\listtablename` (redef. name), 381
- `\ll` (\ll binary rel.), 493
- `\llcorner` (\llcorner math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\Lleftarrow` (\Lleftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\lll` (\lll binary rel.), 494
- `\ln` (ln math op.), 153, 500
- `\lnapprox` (\lnapprox neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\lneq` (\lneq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\lneqq` (\lneqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\lnot` (\lnot math sym.), 498
- `\lnsim` (\lnsim neg. binary rel.), 495
- local commands, *see* under scope
- localization, of L^AT_EX, 535–536
- locating errors, 71
- location of B^IB^TE_X database and style files, 445
- lof (list of figures file), 478, **478**, 488, **519**
- `\log` (log math op.), 153, 500
- log (L^AT_EX log file), 6, 20, **34**, 68, 80, 383, 391, 477, **518**, 520
 - error and warning messages recorded in, 11, 80
- log files
 - for B^IB^TE_X, *see* `blg`
 - for indexes, *see* `ilg`
 - for L^AT_EX, *see* `log`
- log-like functions, *see* operators
- logical
 - design, 35, 235
 - of books, 481–483
 - units, 8, 24–243, 251, 257, 274, 292, 296–298, 414, 443, 455, 465, **472–473**, 512, 522
 - hierarchy of, 240, 241
 - numbering of, **410**, **472**
 - numbering of proclamations within, 112
- logos, 63–65
- long commands, 57
- `\Longleftarrow` (\Longleftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\longleftarrow` (\longleftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\Longleftrightarrow` (\Longleftrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\longleftrightarrow` (\longleftrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\longmapsto` (\longmapsto math arrow), 497
- `\Longrightarrow` (\Longrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\longrightarrow` (\longrightarrow math arrow), 497
- longtable (pack.), 301
- `\looparrowleft` (\looparrowleft math arrow), 497
- `\looparrowright` (\looparrowright math arrow), 497
- `\lor` (\vee math op.), 496
- lot (list of tables files), **477**, 488, **519**
- Louisville.tex (sample file), 27
- low-level font commands, 79

- lowercase counter styles
 letters (`\alpha`), 408
 roman numerals (`\roman`), 107, 408
- lowline (`_` text symbol), 61, 64, 508
- `\lozenge` (\diamond math sym.), 498
- `\lrcorner` (\lrcorner math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\Lsh` (\curvearrowright math arrow), 497
- `\ltimes` (\ltimes math op.), 496
- Lucida Bright, 531, 534
- lucidabr (pack.), 534
- lucidabr.dtx (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- lucidabr.fdd (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- lucidabr.ins (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- lucidabr.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- lucidabr.yy (PSNFSS distr. file), 534
- `\lVert` (\lVert math delimiter), 150
- `\lvert` ($|$ math delimiter), 150
- `\lvertneqq` (\nlessgtr neg. binary rel.), 495
- LY1 (pack. opt.), 533, 534
- Mac, *see* Macintosh
- Macintosh, 5, 452, 481, 512, 539
 FTP clients, 526
- macron (`˘` text accent), 63, 506
- macros, *see* commands *and* custom commands
- MacTeX (Windows L^AT_EX front end), 5
- main entries, in indexes, 257, 455, **456**, **459**, 462, 463
- main matter, 237, **239–251**, 473
- `\mainmatter` (struct. com.), 473
- `\makebox` (box com.), 91, **91**, 92–94, 96, 98
- makeglos (pack.), 470
- `\makeglossary` (preamble glossary com.), 470, 518
- makeidx (pack.), 299, **456**, 480
- MakeIndex, 61, 258, **455–470**, 519
 and font commands, 75
- `\maketitle` (title-page com.), 236, 237, 474
 and abstracts, 239, 274, 294
 and page styles, 260
- MANUAL (bibl. entry type), 430, **442**
- manuals, in B^IB^TE^X database files, 442
- manuscripts
 in B^IB^TE^X database files, 441–442
 preparing for publication, 471
- `\mapsto` (\mapsto math arrow), 497
- `\mapstochar` (math arrow), 497
- marginal comments, **96–97**, 486
 in double-sided documents, 97
 in equations, 96
 in multiline math environments, 96
 space between, 411
 width of paragraph box for, 97
- `\marginpar` (marginal comment com.), 96
 in double-sided documents, 97
- `\marginparpush` (length com.), 411
- `\marginparwidth` (length com.), 97
- margins, 411, 416
 of nested lists, 416
 showing symbolic references in, **246**, 301
- `\markboth` (left and right page header com.), **258**
 arguments of, 260
- `\markleft` (left page header com.), 260, 271
- `\markright` (right page header com.), 258
- master document, 479–481
- MASTERSTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 430, **439–440**
- math, 6
 accents, **16**, **157–158**, 167, 168, 289, 382, 485
 alphabets, 164–166, 169, *183*, **182–184**, 289, 396, 502
 arrows, 160, 171, 228, 497
 as delimiters, 148, *149*, **150**
 stretchable, **160**, 229–230
 vertical, 229
- binary operations, *see* binary operations
- binary relations, *see* binary relations
- characters, 12, 47
- environments, 136–138
 aligned, *see under* aligned, *see under* aligned
 and `\verb` commands, 132
 blank lines in, 137, 140
 displayed, *see* displayed math environments,
 see displayed math environments
 inline, *see* inline math environments
 multiline, **202–207**, 321
 page breaks in, 230
 spaces in, 137
- fonts, 182–184
 blackboard bold, 165, **184**, 396, 502
 bold, 168, **183**, *183*, **185**, 396, 502
 bold italic, 183
 calligraphic, 169, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 Euler Fraktur, 164, **184**, 289, 396, 502
 Euler Script, **289**, 396, 502, 502
 italic, **183**, *183*, 502
 roman, **183**, *183*, 502
 sans serif, **183**, *183*, 502
 size of, 186
 typewriter, **183**, *183*, 502
- mode, *see* math mode
- multiline, 195–231
 Visual Guide to, **195**, 196
- operators, 14, 15, 17, 39, 141, *153*, **152–157**, 376, 496, 500
 declaring, 39, 379–380
 large, 16, **18**, 144, 151, *156*, **155–157**, 287, 501
 with limits, 16, 18, 144, 153, *153*, 155, *156*, 287, 500, 501

- subscripts and superscripts, 186
- symbol alphabets, 184
 - blackboard bold, 184
 - calligraphic, 184
 - Euler Fraktur, 184
 - Greek, 184
- symbols, *see* math symbols
- text in, 13, **18**, 66, 83, 91, 138, **146–147**, 164, 183, 213–215, 229, 289
 - specifying fonts for, 146
 - typing, 24, 135–193
- `math` (inline math env.), 136
- math arrows, 160, 171, 228
 - as delimiters, 148, *149*, **150**, *499*
 - stretchable, **160**, 229–230
 - vertical, 229
- math commands, 15, 18, 143, 145, 157, 175, 181, 187, 191
 - for alignment of formulas, 202
- math delimiters, **15–16**, 17, *149*, **147–152**, 164–166, 168, 169, 172, 173, 175, 204, 223, 224, *499*
 - and large operators, 151
 - arrows, 148
 - balancing, 150, 166, 204
 - blank, 150, 166
 - fixed-size, 150
 - in inline math environments, 152
 - in `smallmatrix` subsidiary math environments, 223, 224
 - large, in `array` subsidiary math environment, 301
 - left bracket (`[`), 15, 147, 165
 - limitations of stretching, **151**
 - right bracket (`]`), 15, 147, 165
 - specifying size of, **150**, 168
 - stretchable, 41, 149–150
 - with `matrix` variants, 223
- math font commands, *see also* font command declarations *and* font commands
 - for bold
 - `\boldsymbol`, 168, 184, **185**, 289, *502*
 - `\mathbb`, 165, **184**, *502*
 - `\mathbf`, 168, **183**, *183*, **185**, *502*
 - `\pmb`, **185–186**, 289
 - for italics
 - `\mathit`, **183**, *183*, *502*
 - for series
 - `\mathnormal`, **183**, *183*, *502*
 - for shape
 - `\mathcal`, 169, **184**, *502*
 - `\mathfrak`, 164, **184**, 289, *502*
 - `\mathrm`, *183*, *502*
 - `\mathscr`, **289**, 502, *502*
 - `\mathsf`, **183**, *183*, *502*
 - for size
 - `\displaystyle`, **186**, 191
 - `\scriptscriptstyle`, **186**, 191
 - `\scriptstyle`, **186**, 191
 - `\textstyle`, **186**, 191
 - for weight
 - `\boldsymbol`, 168, 184, **185**, 289, *502*
 - `\mathbf`, 168, **183**, *183*, **185**, *502*
 - `\pmb`, **185–186**, 289
- math mode, 6, **46**, 59, 131, 138, 146, 152, 153, 186, 373, 379, 380, 400
- math symbols, 13, 38, 47, 115, *147–503*
 - alphabets, **184**
 - and delimiters, 16, 148, 150
 - bold, **185–186**, 289, 300
 - building new, 166, **178–182**, 376
 - classification of, **172–173**, 182
 - declaring types of, 182
 - end of proof, 97, 379
 - in text, 369
 - large, 215–217
 - negated, 181–182
 - shorthand commands for, 368
 - side-setting, 181–182
 - sizes of, 186
 - spacing of, 171–176
 - stacking, 41, 178–181
 - STIX, 171–178
 - stretchable, 159–161
 - suppressing, 115, 116
- math units, *see* mu
- `\mathbb` (\mathbb{X}), 165, **184**, *502*
- `\mathbf` (math font weight com.), 168, **183**, *183*, **185**, *502*
- `\mathbin` (binary-op. com.), 182
- `\mathcal` (\mathcal{X}), 169, **184**, *502*
 - and Euler Script, 289
- Mathematical Reviews*, 143
- `\mathfrak` (\mathfrak{X}), 164, **184**, 289, *502*
- `\mathit` (math font shape com.), **183**, *183*, *502*
- `\mathnormal` (math font shape com.), **183**, *183*, *502*
- `\mathrel` (binary-rel. def. com.), 182
- `\mathring` (\mathring{x} math accent), *158*, *502*
- `\mathrm` (math font shape com.), *183*, *502*
- `\mathscr` (opt. of eucal pack.), **289**, 391, 396, *502*
- `\mathscr` (\mathscr{X} math font shape com.), **289**, *502*, *502*
- `\mathsf` (math font shape com.), **183**, *183*, *502*
- `\mathstrut` (spacing com.), 98, 187
- MathTime*, 533
 - installing, 533
- `mathtime` (pack.), 533

- mathtime.dtx (PSNFSS distr. file), 533
- mathtime.ins (PSNFSS distr. file), 533
- mathtime.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 533
- mathtools (pack.), 193
- \mathtt (math font shape com.), **183**, 183, 502
- \mathversion, 185
- matrices, 16–17, 220–227
 - in inline math environments, 223–224
- matrix (subsid. math env.), 16–17, 196, 198, 220, **220–227**
 - variants, 223
- \max (max math op.), 153, 287, 500
- MaxMatrixCols (counter), 221
- \mbox (box com.), 91
- McLean, Ruari, 555, 559
- McPherson, Kent, 258
- \mdseries (font weight com. dec.), 74, 77, 506
- \measuredangle (\sphericalangle math sym.), 498
- measurements, of text boxes, **413**, 413
 - commands for, 413
- medium (font weight), 73, 74, 77, 506
- \medskip (spacing com.), **88**
- \medskipamount (length com.), 382, **414**
- \medspace (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
- messages, 6, 35–39, 521
 - Argument of \xxx has
 - an extra }, 130
 - Bad math environment
 - delimiter, 116, 137, 477
 - \begin{document} ended by \end{xxx}, 71, 130
 - \begin{split} not allowed here, 219
 - \begin{xxx} on input line xx
 - ended by \end{yyy}, 36, 56
 - Can be used only in preamble, 238
 - Command \xxx already defined, 371, 382, 386
 - Display math should end with \$\$, 37
 - Double superscript, 142
 - Environment xxx undefined, 386
 - error, *see* messages
 - Extra alignment tag has been
 - changed to \cr, 225
 - Extra }, or forgotten \xxx, 210
 - File ‘xxx’ not found, 521
 - I was expecting a ‘,’
 - or a ’’, 450, 451
 - Illegal character in array arg, 225
 - Illegal unit of measure (pt
 - inserted), 98
 - Incomplete \iffalse; all text was
 - ignored after line xx, 297
 - Invalid use of \xxx, 146
 - line numbers in, 137, 138
 - Misplaced \xxx, 119, 215
 - Missing \begin{document}, 110
 - Missing control sequence
 - inserted, 412
 - Missing \$ inserted, 37, 38, 131, 137, 138, 140, 221
 - Missing number, treated
 - as zero, 82, 95
 - Missing } inserted, 38, 211
 - No counter ‘xxx’ defined, 408
 - Paragraph ended before \xxx
 - was complete, 36, 99, 109, 225, 378, 384, 468
 - recorded in log file, **34**
 - Runaway argument?, 36, 109, 225, 274, 384, 468
 - Runaway definition?, 37
 - showing paragraph breaks in, 83
 - Something’s wrong-perhaps
 - a missing \item, 104, 254
 - \tag not allowed here, 203
 - Text line contains an invalid
 - character, 37, 48
 - Too many }’s, 56, 274
 - Undefined control sequence, 36, 54, 272, 273, 371
 - Underfull \hbox, **82**, 517
 - Use of \xxx doesn’t match its
 - definition, 384
 - \verb command ended by end of line, 132
 - warning, *see* warning messages
 - with BIB_TE_X, 449–452
 - You’re missing a field name, 449
- Metafont, 527
- metrics, font, *see* font metrics
- \mho (\O math sym.), 498
- Microsoft
 - typography web page, 534
 - Windows, 452
- \mid (| binary rel.), 41, **152**, 165, **173**, 493
- midpoint (\cdot text sym.), 64, 508
- MiKTeX (Windows L^AT_EX front end), 5
- millimeter (mm abs. unit), 411
- \min (min math op.), 153, 287, 500
- minipage (text box env.), 91, 93, 96, 388, 389
 - displaying footnotes in, 96
- minus (–), 7, 14, 47, 59, 141, 172, 175, 176, 183, 204, 205
 - as binary operation, 496
- mirrors, of CTAN, 527
- MISC (bibl. entry type), 431, **442**
- Mittelbach, Frank, xxxi, 86, 513, 514, 558, 560
- mixing list text environments, 106
- mm (millimeter abs. unit), 411
- \mod (mod math op.), **154**, 155

- `\models` (\models binary rel.), 493
- modes
 - interactive, 97, 381–383, **521**
 - quiet, 521
 - typographic
 - math, *see also* inline and displayed
 - math environments, 6, **46**, 59, 131, 138, 146, 152, 153, 186, 373, 379, 380, 400
 - text, 6, **46**, 47, 138, 164, 373, 379, 400
- modifier keys, 46, 47
- modifiers, in `\index` commands, 460
 - combining, 460
- modifying environments, 385–388
- monospaced fonts, 72, 73
- `\month` (time com.), 65
- month (BIB \TeX database field), 431, 442
- Moore, Ross, 230, 558
- movable arguments of commands, 58, 477
- `\mp` (\mp math op.), 496
- `mpfootnote` (counter), 407
- `mrabbrev.bib` (BIB \TeX database file), 442
- `mrnumber` (bibl. com.), 431
- `\mspace` (spacing com.), **174**, 174, 503
- `mtbold` (opt. of `mathtime` pack.), 533
- `mtfonts.fdd` (PSNFSS distr. file), 533
- `\mu` (μ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\mu` (math unit, rel.), 174, 174, 503
- `multicol` (pack.), 86, 295, 301
- `multicols` (disp. text env.), 86, 513
- `\multicolumn` (table com.), 122, 121–123
- multicolumn text
 - in documents, **86**, 301, 513
 - in tables, 121–123
- multiline
 - boxes, 91
 - formulas, **21–23**, 41, **195–231**
 - Visual Guide* to, **195**, 196
 - aligning, 205
 - splitting, 200–202
 - limits, 157
 - math environments, 321
 - adjusting columns in, 195, 198, **220–228**
 - aligning, 195, 198
 - marginal comments in, 96
 - page breaks in, 230–231
 - subscripts and superscripts, 157
 - table entries, 120, 122
- `\multimap` (\multimap math arrow), 497
- multipage tables, 301
- multiple
 - arguments
 - in custom commands, 374, 376
 - authors
 - in bibliographies, 432
 - in documents, 270–271, 292
 - bibliographies in a document, 257
 - captions, 248
 - citations, 256
 - documents, cross-referencing among, 301
 - files, documents composed of, 479–481
 - indexes, 469
 - spaces, 14, 48, 55
 - tables of contents, 476
- multiplication, 14, 141, 144
- `multline` (disp. math env.), 196, 198, **200–202**
 - indentation of lines in, 201
 - rules for, 200
- `multline*` (disp. math env.), 201–202
 - indentation of lines in, 201
- `\multlinegap` (length com.), 201
- `myams.tpl`, 282–285
- `myheadings` (page style), 258
- n -th root, 18, **145**
- `\nabla` (∇ math sym.), 498
- `namelimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), **287**
- names
 - base (of files), 518
 - for abstracts, 239
 - for proclamations, 109, 112
 - of authors
 - in articles, 265, 284, 292
 - in bibliographies, 432
 - in running heads, 265
 - of commands, 52, 53, 391
 - of counters, 112
 - of files
 - with `\graphicspath` command, 481
 - of fonts
 - L \TeX 2.09, 301
 - PSNFSS (Berry scheme), 532
 - redefinable, 257, 310, 311, 367, **380–381**, 535
 - tagging equations with, 20, **189–191**, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219
- `\natural` (\natural math sym.), 498
- `\ncong` (\ncong neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ne` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 181, 495
- `\nearrow` (\nearrow math arrow), 497
- `\NeedsTeXFormat` (preamble com.), 69, **238**, 391, 519
- `\neg` (\neg math sym.), 498
- negated math symbols, **181–182**, 495
- `\negmedspace` (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
- `\negthickspace` (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
- `\negthinspace` (spacing com.), 166, **174**, 174, 503, 510
- `\neq` (\neq neg. binary rel.), 495
- nesting
 - of comment environments, 70

- of list text environments, 105
- New Font Selection Scheme, *see* NFSS and PSNFSS
- `\newcommand` (custom com.), 39, 58, **368–385**
 - defining arguments with, 374
 - name already in use, 381
 - optional arguments, 378
- `\newcommand*` (custom com.), 377
- `\newcounter` (custom counter com.), 407, 411
 - optional argument of, **407**
- `\newenvironment` (custom env.), 385–388
- `\newenvironment*` (custom env.), 389
- `\newlabel` (aux. file com.), 34, 518
- `newlattice` (pack.), 238, 391, 392
- `newlattice.sty` (sample file), 299, 384, 388, **390–400**, 400
- `\newlength` (length-command def. com.), 411
- `\newline` (line breaking com.), *see also* `\`, 81
- `\newline` (line-breaking com.), **81, 83**
- `\newpage` (page breaking com.), **84, 85**, 251
- `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), **109**, 111, 113, 115, 282, 314, 410
 - optional arguments of, 111, 112
 - syntax of, 112
- `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), **113**, 387
- `\newtheoremstyle` (procl. com.), 115
- `\nexists` (\nexists math sym.), 498
- NFSS (New Font Selection Scheme), **513**, 514
- `nfssfont` (pack.), 299
- `nfssfont.tex` (L^AT_EX distr. file), 62, 299
- `\NG` (Eng Eur. char.), 509
- `\ng` (eng Eur. char.), 509
- `\ngeq` (\ngeq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ngeqq` (\ngeqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ngeqslant` (\ngeqslant neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ngtr` (\ngtr neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ni` (\ni binary rel.), 493
- `\nLeftarrow` (\nLeftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\nleftarrow` (\nleftarrow math arrow), 497
- `\nLeftrightarrow` (\nLeftrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\nleftrightarrow` (\nleftrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\nleq` (\nleq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nleqq` (\nleqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nleqslant` (\nleqslant neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nless` (\nless neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nmid` (\nmid neg. binary rel.), 181, 495
- `noamsfonts` (doc. class opt.), 288
- `\nobreakdash` (hyph. prev. com.), 67
- `\nobreakspace` (spacing com.), 60
- `\nocite` (bibl. com.), **445**
- `\nocite*` (bibl. com.), 445
- `\node` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357
- `\nofiles` (preamble com.), 488
 - and auxiliary files, 488, 518
- `\noindent` (indentation-suppression com.), **84**, 486
- `nointlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), 287
- `\nolimits` (limit-control com.), **144, 154**, 155, 166
- `\nolinebreak` (linebreak-suppression com.), 83
- `nomath` (doc. class opt.), 288
- `nonamlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), 287
- `nonbreakable spaces` (\sim tie), **9**, 47, 50, 59, **60**, 83, 510
 - absorb spaces, 60
 - in BIB_TE_X databases, 433
 - with cross-references, 246
- `\nonfrenchspacing` (spacing com.), 51
- `\nopagebreak` (page break suppression com.), 85
- normal
 - document font family, 73, 74
 - font shape
 - command declarations for, **74**, 74, 107, 506, 533
 - commands for, **74**, 74, 506, 533
 - math commands for, **146, 183, 183, 502**
- `\normalfont` (font shape com. dec.), **74**, 74, 107, 146, 506, 533
- `\normalsize` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- `nosumlimits` (opt. of `amsmath` pack.), **287**
- `\not` (math com.), **181**
- `\notag`, 22, 199, 201, **203**, 206, 219
- notation (text env.), 315
- `notcite` (opt. of `showkeys` pack.), 246
- `note` (beamer doc. class opt.), 342
- `\note` (beamer com.), 342
- `note` (BIB_TE_X database field), 431
- notes, in presentations, 342, 343
- `NoticesV.pdf` (sample file), 540
- `NoticesVI.pdf` (sample file), 540
- `\notin` (\notin neg. binary rel.), **181**, 495
- `notitlepage` (doc. class opt.), **287**, 295, 474
- Nowacki, Janusz M., 514
- `\nparallel` (\nparallel neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nprec` (\nprec neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\npreceq` (\npreceq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nrightarrow` (\nrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\nrightharpoonright` (\nrightharpoonright math arrow), 497
- `\nshortmid` (\nshortmid neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nshortparallel` (\nshortparallel neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsim` (\nsim neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsubseteq` (\nsubseteq neg. binary rel.), 165, 495
- `\nsubseteqeq` (\nsubseteqeq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsucc` (\nsucc neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsucceq` (\nsucceq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsupseteq` (\nsupseteq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nsupseteqeq` (\nsupseteqeq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ntriangleleft` (\ntriangleleft neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ntrianglelefteq` (\ntrianglelefteq neg. binary rel.), 495

- `\ntriangleright` (\triangleright neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\ntrianglerighteq` (\trianglerighteq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nu` (ν Greek char.), 147, 492
- number (BIB \TeX database field), 430, 431
- numbered lists, *see* `enumerate`
- numbering
 - automatic, 19, 21, 34, 103, 109, 219, 240
 - of appendices, 243, 473
 - of equations, **18–20**, 40, **139–140**, 189, 199, 201, 203
 - groups, 205–207
 - in chapters of books, 473
 - in multiline math environments, 203
 - is relative, 189, 190
 - of subsidiary math environments, 218, 219
 - suppressing, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219
 - variations, **190**, 206
 - within sections, 19, 140, 238
 - within `split` `subsid. math align. env.`, 217–219
- of figures, 248
- of pages, style of, 409
- of proclamations, 109, **111–112**
 - consecutively, 111–112
 - suppressing, 113, 114, 387
 - within sections, 111
- of structural units, 408, 472, 522
 - controlling, 410
 - in books, 472
 - sections, 240
 - suppressing, 241, 473
- of tables, 248
- renumbering, 19, 34, 522
- with counters, 406–414
 - resetting, 407, 409
- `\numberline` (`toc` file com.), 477
- numbers
 - counter styles for, 107, 408, **408–409**, 418
 - for equations, placement of, 286, 295
 - for proclamations, position of, 115
 - in bibliographic fields, 430
 - in lists, 103
 - keys, 46
 - line
 - in error messages, 137, 138
 - in warning messages, 11
 - page
 - referencing, 247
 - style of, 409
 - ranges, **11**, **59**, 64
 - in BIB \TeX databases, 430, 433
 - in index entries, 460
 - real, in length commands, 410
 - stored by L \TeX , 63–65
 - stored in
 - counters, 406
 - registers, 382
 - version, 519
- `\numberwithin`, **19**, **140**, 238, 472
- numeric counter style (`\arabic`), 408, 408, 418
- `\nVDash` (\nVdash neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\nrightarrow` (\nrightarrow math arrow), 497
- O'Sean, Arlene Ann, 205, 555, 560
- O, slashed (\emptyset , \emptyset), 64, 505
- Oberdieck, Heiko, 307
- obtaining
 - files from the Internet, 525–528
 - PostScript fonts, 534
 - sample files for this book, 5, 528
 - the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 528
- octothorp ($\#$), 61, 64, 508
- `\oddsidemargin` (length com.), 260
- `\odot` (\odot math op.), 496
- `\OE` ethel (\eth), 64, 505
- `\oe` ethel (\eth), 64, 505
- ogonek (Eur. accent), 509
- `\oint` (\oint large math op.), **145**, 156, 501
- old-style digits, 46
- `\oldstylenums` (old-style digits com.), 46
- `\Omega` (Ω Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\omega` (ω Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\ominus` (\ominus math op.), 496
- `onecolumn` (doc. class opt.), 287, 295
- `\onecolumn` (single-column com.), 86
- `oneside` (doc. class opt.), **287**, 295, 474
- `\only` (`beamer` com.), 321–323, **325–327**, 331
- `\onslide` (`beamer` com.), 321, 323, **325–327**, 330, 331
- `openany` (doc. class opt.), 474
- `openbib` (doc. class opt.), **296**, 296
- `openright` (doc. class opt.), 474
- operations
 - arithmetical, 14–15, 141–143
 - binary, *see* binary operations
- operators, math, 14, 15, 17, 39, 141, 153, 156, **152–157**, 376, 496, 500
 - declaring, 39, 379–380
 - large, 16, **18**, 144, 151, 156, **155–157**, 287, 501
 - sizing of math delimiters with, 151
 - with limits, 16, 18, 144, 153, 153, 155, 156, 287, 500, 501
 - defining, 182, 183, 380
 - without limits
 - defining, 182, 183, 186, 238, 289, 379

- `\oplus` (\oplus math op.), 496
- optional
 - arguments, 55, 83, 85, 97–99, 109, 145, 146, 160, 222, 231, 238
 - multiple, 53, 54
 - of `\`, **81**, **83**, 231
 - of commands, 104, 106, 107, 111, 187, 188, 256, 266–269, 339, 407, 409, 416, 417, 422, 478
 - of custom commands, 378
 - of custom environments, 385, 387, 389
 - of environments, 109, 112, 116, 119, 217, 231, 250, 251, 389, 488
 - of sectioning commands, 241, 475
 - of structural commands, 243, 472
 - of TikZ commands, 350
 - of top matter commands, 263–271, 319
 - use square brackets ([]), 18, **53–54**, 107, 116, 119, 274
 - bibliographic fields, 431, 434–442
 - hyphens, 12, 66, **66**, 80
- options
 - of packages, *see* package options
- organization (BIB_T_E_X database field), 431, 437
- organization of files, 479–481
- orientation of pages, document class options for, 295
- orthogonality of font commands, **78–79**
- `\oslash` (\oslash math op.), 496
- OT1 font encoding, 532
- `\otimes` (\otimes math op.), 496
- out (hyperref bookmarks file), 309
- out (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356, 361
- `\overbrace` (horizontal brace com.), **159**, 167
 - with a superscript, 159
- overdot (\cdot text accent), 63, 506
- `\overfullrule` (length com.), 80
- overlapping braces, 56
- overlays, *see also under* presentations
 - commands for, 325
 - layering, 321
- `\overleftarrow` ($\overleftarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- `\overletrightarrow` ($\overletrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- `\overline` ($\overline{}$ math line sym.), 158, **160**, 168
- overprint (beamer env.), 347
- `\overrightarrow` ($\overrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- `\overset` (symbol-building com.), 166, **178**, 376
 - creating binary operations and relations with, 180
- `\owns` (\owns binary rel.), 493
- `\P` (\P pilcrow or paragraph)
 - math symbol, 498
 - text symbol, 64, 508
- package options, 19, *see also* specific packages, 237, 246, 286–287, 289, 307–309, 391, 502, 533, 534, 536
 - are passed down from document classes, 238
 - handled electively, 301
 - preventing loading of, 288
- packages, 32, 237, 299, 512, 514
 - accents, 158
 - afterpage, 300
 - alltt, 131, 299, 520
 - ambsy, 289, 290
 - amscd, 228–230, 289
 - amsfonts, **289–290**
 - amsgen, 289, 290
 - amsmidx, 290
 - amsmath, 32, 220, 286–287, **288**, 289, 290, 411, 514, 520
 - amsopn, 289, 290
 - amssymb, 164, 282, 288, 289, 379
 - amstext, 289, 290
 - amsthm, 32, 290
 - amsxtra, 157, 158, 288, 289
 - apalike, 443
 - array, 300
 - automatic loading of, 336, 516
 - babel, 300, 535–536
 - backref, 308, 309
 - biblatex, 453
 - bm, 300
 - booktabs, 124
 - calc, 301, 410, 413
 - commands in, 391
 - cyrillic, 300
 - dates of, 520
 - dcolumn, 120, 301
 - delarray, 301
 - distribution, AMS, 261, **288–290**, 313, 385, 424, 442, 443, 511
 - documentation for, 97, 251, 300, 302, 346, 385, 533, 534
 - enumerate, 107, 301, 387, 391
 - eucal, 289, 290, 391, 502
 - options, **289**, 396, 502
 - eufrak, 289
 - exscale, 289, 299
 - fancyhdr, 260, 525, 528
 - fileerr, 301
 - fontenc, **533**, 535, 536
 - fontsmpl, 301
 - ftnright, 301
 - geometry, 41, 260
 - graphics, 300
 - graphicx, 26, 176, 238, 249–250, 288, 513
 - hhline, 124, 301
 - hyperref, 307–311

- in required directory, 300
- in tools directory, 300–302
- in unpacked directory, 299
- indentfirst, 301
- inputenc, 535
- interdependencies of, 261
- latexsym, 164, 237, 282, 288, 299
- layout, 258, 301
- listings, 127
- loading with `\usepackage`, 54, 177, 237
 - multiple, 238
- longtable, 301
- lucidabr, 534
- makeglos, 470
- makeidx, 299, 456, 480
- mathtime, 533
- mathtools, 193
- multicol, 86, 295, 301
- newlattice, 238, 391, 392
- nfssfont, 299
- obtaining the AMS packages and AMSFonts, 528
- options, *see* package options, *see* package options
 - paralist, 107
 - program, 127
 - psnfss, 300
 - rawfonts, 301
 - setspace, 83
 - showidx, 299, 459
 - showkeys, 246, 301
 - somedefs, 301
 - source files, 238, 298, 443, 528
 - stix, 177
 - tabularx, 301
 - theorem, 301
 - TikZ, 27, 249, 350
 - times, 532
 - tools, 300
 - trace, 301
 - updates to AMSFonts and amsmath, 520
 - upref, 288, 289
 - varioref, 246, 301
 - verbatim, 70, 71, 130, 131, 301, 391
 - versions of, 514, 515, 519–520
 - xcolor, 313, 336
 - xr, 246, 301
 - xspace, 302, 372–373
 - xy-pic, 230
- page (counter), 406, 407
- pagebackref (opt. of hyperref pack.), 308
- \pagebreak (page breaking com.), 84, 85, 486, 487
 - optional arguments of, 85
- \pagename (redef. name), 381
- \pagenumbering (page-number style com.), 409
- \pageref (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 243, 247, 257, 310, 486
- \pageref* (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 310
- pages
 - breaking, 84–85, 251
 - in align environment, 230
 - in cases subsidiary environment, 230
 - in displayed math environments, 230–231
 - in gather environment, 230
 - in multiline math environments, 231
 - preventing, 231
 - components of, 258
 - headers, *see* running heads
 - layout of, 258–260, 301
 - for amart document class, 259
 - numbering, style of, 409
 - odd, starting chapters on, 474
 - orientation of, document class options for, 295
 - referencing, 247
 - with varioref package, 301
 - size changing with \enlargethispage, 85, 486, 488
 - styles of, 258–260
 - title, 522
 - document class options for, 237, 287, 288, 295
 - of articles, 237, 239
 - of books, 473, 474
 - of presentations, 27
- pages (BIBTeX database field), 431
 - page ranges in, 433
- \pagestyle (set page style), 258
- pagination, 486–487
- paper size, document class options for, 286, 294
- \par (paragraph breaking com.), 9, 48, 49, 57, 74, 263
- \par (paragraph-breaking com.), 80, 102, 108
 - in error messages, 83
- \paragraph (struct. com.), 240, 241, 472
- paragraph (counter), 407
- paragraph boxes, 95–96
- paragraph text symbol, *see* \P
- \paragraph* (struct. com.), 241
- \paragraphname (hyperref redef. name), 311
- paragraphs, 48, 83–84
 - breaking into lines, 11, 80, 82, 517
 - breaking lines in, 65
 - hanging indents, 84
 - horizontal alignment of, 108
 - indentation of first lines, 84, 88, 301, 411
 - interline spacing of, 41
 - terminating
 - with blank lines, 9, 41, 48, 83, 102, 128

- with `\par` command, **48**, 49, 57, 74, 80, 83, 108
- vertical spacing between, 108, 411, 416, 420, 483
- `paralist` (pack.), 107
- `\parallel` (\parallel binary rel.), 493
- `\parbox` (box com.), 91, 93, **95**, 122, 413
 - in `tabular` environments, 95
- parentequation, 409
- parentheses (`()`), 7, 46
 - as math delimiters, **15**, 17, 41, 147, 149, 168, 204, 499
 - in index entries, 460
 - suppressing the use of in tags, 189
- `\parindent` (length com.), **411**, 422
- `\parsep` (length com.), 415, **416**, 420, 422
- `\parskip` (length com.), **411**, 415, 416, 422, 483
- `\part` (struct. com.), 241, 292, 339, **472**
- `part` (counter), 407
- `\partial` (∂ math sym.), 498
- `\partname` (redef. name), 381
 - and `hyperref` package, 311
- `\partopsep` (length com.), 416
- parts
 - in books, 472
 - in presentations, 341
- Patashnik, Oren, 427, 452, 560
- path attributes, `TikZ` graphics, 360–363
- pathnames, on Mac, Windows computer, and UNIX systems, 481
- `\pause` (`beamer` com.), 30, 87, 321, **321**, 325
- pc (point abs. unit), 411
- `pcr` (PSNFSS font name), 532
- Windows computers, 5, 481, 512
 - FTP clients, 526
- PDF (Portable Document Format), 306–307, 488
 - files
 - bibliographic citations in, 308
 - bookmarks in, 309
 - creating, 307
 - external hyperlinks in, 310–311
 - for graphics, **249**
 - for legacy documents, 307
 - for presentations, 27, 313–347
 - hyperlinks in, 307–311
 - JavaScript in, 306
 - size of, 306
 - suppressing hyperlinks in, 310
 - typeset, 6, 307
 - viewing in Web browsers, 306
 - fonts
 - partial downloading of, 306
 - proprietary, 306
- `pdftex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- percent (%)
 - as comment character, 8, 45, **68–70**, 125, 282, 464
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 70, 449
 - as text symbol, 7, 61, 64, 508
 - in e-mail addresses, 268
- periods (`.`), 7, 46, **49–51**
 - and initials, 51
 - and italic correction, 76
 - and spacing rules, 49–51
 - end of sentences, 49
 - following capital letters, 50
 - in abbreviations, 49–50
 - in bibliographies, 50
 - in `BIBTeX` databases, 432
 - terminating sentences with, **48–51**
- `\perp` (\perp binary rel.), 493
- Personal `TEX`, Inc., 533
- personalized templates
 - for AMS document classes, 282–285
- `\phantom` (spacing com.), **87**, 173, **175–176**, 211, 413
- PHDTHESIS (bibl. entry type), 431, **439–440**
- `\Phi` (Φ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\phi` (ϕ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `phv` (PSNFSS font name), 532
- `\Pi` (Π Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\pi` (π Greek char.), 147, 492
- pica (pc abs. unit), 411
- `picture` (drawing env.), 249
- `pilcrow` (\P text sym.), 64, 508
- `\pitchfork` (\pitchfork binary rel.), 494
- placement
 - of commas in formulas, 139
 - of equation numbers, 286, 295
 - of equations, 286, 295
 - of figures, **250**, 251, 486, 488
 - of `\index` commands, **464**, 487
 - of index in document, 456, 467
 - of `\label` commands, 487
 - of limits, 287
 - of roots, 145
 - of tables, 486, 488
 - of text boxes, 99
- `plain`
 - `BIBTeX` style, 427
 - page style, 258
 - theorem style, **113**, 113–115
- `plain.bst` (`BIBTeX` style file), 427
- `plain.tex` (Plain `TEX` source file), 515

- platform independence
 - of graphics, 313
 - plus (+), 14, 172, 175, 176, 204, 205
 - as binary operation, 496
 - plus and minus rule, 172, 175, 176
 - and subformulas, 204
 - in `multiline` environments, 201
 - `\pm` (\pm math op.), 496
 - `\pmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 17, 223
 - `\pmb` (poor man's bold font com.), 185–186, 289
 - `\pmod` (`(mod)` math op.), 15, 154, 155
 - `\pod` (`()` math op.), 15, 154, 155
 - poetry, typing, 128–129
 - point (`pt` abs. unit), 11, 40, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 94, 95, 296, 411
 - poor man's bold, 185–186, 289
 - portability
 - of bibliographic databases, 432, 434
 - of prohibited characters, 47
 - Portable Document Format, *see under* PDF
 - Portable Graphics Format, 313
 - position, of proclamation numbers, 115
 - PostScript (PS), 305
 - documents on the Internet, 305
 - files
 - including fonts in, 305
 - size of, 305
 - fonts, 305, 513, 531–534
 - AMSFonTS, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
 - Computer Modern, 31, 513, 515, 531
 - European Modern, 514
 - obtaining, 534
 - using with L^AT_EX, 300, 533
 - PostScript New Font Selection Scheme, *see* PSNFSS
 - `\pounds`
 - math symbol (£), 498
 - pound sign or sterling (£), 509
 - `\Pr` (`Pr` math op.), 153, 500
 - preamble, 24–239
 - commands in, 19, 24, 27, 54, 69, 83, 109, 111, 113, 115, 140, 183, 228, 237, 238, 282, 288, 307, 314–315, 350, 370, 379, 386, 391, 410, 468, 480, 488, 518, 519
 - custom commands in, 238, 370
 - customizing, in template files, 282
 - defining counters in, 408
 - proclamations defined in, 238
 - `\prec` (`<` binary rel.), 493
 - `\precapprox` (\lesssim binary rel.), 494
 - `\preccurlyeq` (\preccurlyeq binary rel.), 494
 - `\preceq` (\leq binary rel.), 493
 - `\precnapprox` (\lesssim neg. binary rel.), 495
 - `\precneqq` (\lesssim neg. binary rel.), 495
 - `\precnsim` (\lesssim neg. binary rel.), 495
 - `\precsim` (\lesssim binary rel.), 494
- preparation
 - final, of books, 484–489
 - of illustrations, 485
 - presentations, 27–30, 313
 - `babybeamer1`, 322, 321–323
 - `babybeamer2`, 319
 - `babybeamer3`, 326
 - `babybeamer4`, 328
 - `babybeamer5`, 327
 - `babybeamer6`, 330
 - `babybeamer7`, 332–335
 - `babybeamer8`, 336
 - `babybeamer9`, 338
 - `babybeamer10`, 346, 347
 - `beamerstructure1`, 340
 - `beamerstructure2`, 341, 342
 - body of, 315
 - columns in, 335
 - commands for, 28, 336, 339, 345
 - optional arguments of, 339
 - cross-referencing within, 316
 - equations in, 316
 - flexibility in, 345, 346
 - frames in, 345
 - hyperlinks in, 331–335, 345, 346
 - in color, 336–338
 - lists in, 327–329
 - navigation symbols, 341
 - notes in, 342, 343
 - overlays in, 321, 321–331
 - commands for, 30, 321, 322, 325
 - examples of, 323–324
 - layering, 321, 323
 - specifications, 325, 329
 - syntax of, 325–327
 - parts in, 341
 - planning, 345–346
 - preamble of, 27, 314–315
 - `quickbeamer1`, 315, 317, 318, 319
 - `quickbeamer2`, 319, 320
 - sectioning of, 316
 - sidebars, 316
 - sidebars in, 331, 339
 - slides, 27, 321
 - structure of, 339
 - tables of contents in, 339, 345
 - themes for, 27, 316, 319, 343, 344, 345
 - color options, 344
 - font options, 345
 - theorems in, 345
 - top matter of, 27, 314–315, 319
 - with `beamer`, 27
 - with `beamer` document class, 313–347
 - preventing
 - case changes in bibliographic entries, 433

- hyphenation, 66–67, 91
- indentation of paragraphs, 84
- line breaks, 83, 91
- page breaks, **82**, 85, 231
- removal
 - of horizontal space, 87
 - of vertical space, 89
- spaces following environments, 388
- `\prime` (′ math sym.), 498
- prime (′), 15, 142, 182, 498
- primitive commands, 382, 515
- PrintDirect
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 543
- Printer Pro
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 543
- printers
 - drivers for, 34, **517**
 - specifying for `hyperref` package, 307
 - DVI drivers for, 300, 527
 - for iPad, 543
- `\Printindex` (index com. for multiple indexes), 469
- `\printindex` (index com.), **456**, 467
- printing
 - typeset (DVI) files, 517
 - typeset (PDF) files, 517
- `proc` (doc. class), 516
- `proc-l` (doc. class), 262, 381
- PROCEEDINGS (bibl. entry type), 431, 438–439, **442**
- proceedings, conference, in BIB_TE_X
 - database files, 430
- processed index files, *see* `ind`
- processing
 - bibliographies, 443–452
 - indexes, 465–467
- proclamations, 40, 101, **108–115**, 414
 - commands for
 - `\newtheorem` (procl. com.), **109**, 111, 113, 115, 282, 410
 - `\newtheorem*` (procl. com.), **113**, 387
 - `\newtheoremstyle`, 115
 - `\theoremstyle` (procl. com.), 113–115
 - `\theoremstyle*` (procl. com.), 113–115
 - counters for, 406
 - defining, **109**, 111, 112, 115, 282, 387, 410
 - in preamble, 238
 - with `theorem` package, 301
 - environments for
 - `theorem`, 35, 109, 112, 330, 388
 - invoking, 35, **109**, 112, 330, 388
 - lines following, 41, 102
 - lists in, 110
 - logical design using, 522
 - names of, 112
 - numbering of
 - consecutively, 111–112
 - within sections, 111
 - position of numbers, 115
 - styles of, **113–115**, 514
 - definition, **113**, 113–114
 - plain, **113**, 113–114
 - remark, **113**, 113–114
 - unnumbered, 113, 114, 387
- `\prod` (∏ large math op.), 156, 501
- products, 18, 155
- `products.pdf` (sample illus. file), 315
- program (pack.), 127
- programs, typing, 125–127, 129–131
- prohibited keys, 7, 47
- `\projlim` (proj lim math op.), 153, 500
- prompts, **521**
 - * (interactive), **97**, 381–383, **521**
 - ** , 521
 - ?, 521
 - file name, 521
 - responding to, **521**
- `proof` (text env.), 101, **115–117**, 290, 315
 - changing q.e.d. symbol, 379
 - lines following, 41, 102
 - lists in, 115
 - optional arguments of, 116
 - placement of q.e.d. symbol, 116
- `\proofname` (redef. name), 381
- proofs, 115–117
- proportional fonts, 72, 73
- propositions, *see* proclamations
- `\propto` (∝ binary rel.), 493
- `\protect` (protect fragile commands), **58**, 240, 241, 472, 477
- protecting
 - capitalization in bibliographic entries, 433
 - fragile commands, **58**, 240, 241, 472, 477
- protocols
 - File Transfer, *see* FTP
 - Hypertext Transfer, *see* HTTP
- `\providecommand` (custom com.), 377, **379**, 383
- `\providecommand*` (custom com.), 377
- `\ProvidesPackage` (pack. com.), 520
- providing commands, 379
- PS, *see* PostScript
- `ps2pdf` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `psamsfonts`
 - `amsfonts` package option, 289
 - document class option, 288
- `psfonts.ins` (PSNFSS distr. file), 532
- `\Psi` (Ψ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\psi` (ψ Greek char.), 147, 492
- PSNFSS (PostScript New Font Selection Scheme), 532, 533

- distribution, 532–533
- font names (Berry scheme), 532
- psnfss (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 299
- psnfss (pack.), 300
- pt (point abs. unit), 11, 40, 73, 77, 79, 80, 90, 92, 94, 95, 296, 411
- ptm (PSNFSS font name), 532
- publisher (BIB_TE_X database field), 430, 431
- publishers, preparing manuscripts for, 471
- punctuation
 - in BIB_TE_X databases, 429–434, 450–452
 - marks, 7, 11, 41, **46**, **58–59**, 64, 140, 372, 505, 508
- pybibliographer bibl. manager, 452
- q.e.d. symbol, 116, 379
- \qedhere (proof com.), 41, 117
- \qedsymbol (□ math sym.), 115, 379
 - suppressing, 116
- \qqquad (spacing com.), 86, 90, 174, 174, 212, 503, 510
- \quad (spacing com.), 18, 86, 90, 138, 174, 174, 212, 503, 510
- question marks (?), 7, 46
 - Spanish (¿), 64, 505, 508
 - terminating sentences with, 48–51
- quickbeamer.pdf (sample file), 314
- quickbeamer.tex (sample file), 314–315
- quickbeamer1.pdf (sample file), 315
- quickbeamer1.tex (sample file), 315, 316
- quickbeamer2.pdf (sample file), 319
- quickbeamer2.tex (sample file), 319
- quiet mode, 521
- quotation (disp. text env.), **128**, 414
- quotation marks, 7, 47, **58**, 59, 64
 - double quote key, 7, 46, 47, **59**
 - in BIB_TE_X database fields, 451, 452
 - in BIB_TE_X entries, 442
 - in \index commands, 463
 - European, 509
 - single quote key, 7, 15, 46, **59**
 - typing, 9
- quotations, typing, 127–128
- quote (disp. text env.), 40, **127**, 414
- \quotedblbase (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- quoting, special characters in \index commands, 463
- \r (° ring text accent), 63, 506
- radius (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 351
- \raggedleft (align. command dec.), 108
- \raggedright (align. command dec.), 108
- Rahtz, Sebastian, 249, 307, 513, 558
- \raisebox (box com.), 99, 177
- ranges, numeric, **11**, **59**, 64, 508
 - in BIB_TE_X databases, 430, 433
 - in index entries, 460
- \rangle () math delimiter, 149, **150**, 499
- rawfonts (pack.), 301
- \rbrace () math delimiter, 41, 149, 499
- \rbrack (] math delimiter), 149, 499
- \rceil (⌈ math delimiter), 149, 499
- \Re (℞ math sym.), 498
- read-only, making templates, 285
- readability
 - of documents, 77, 345
 - of source files, 13, 14, 49, 119, 138, 163, 367–371, 384, 422
- Reader, Adobe Acrobat, *see under* Adobe Reader
- real numbers, in length commands, 410
- rectangle (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355, 358, 359
- redefinable names, 310, 311, 367, 381, **380–381**, 535
- redefining commands, 378–379
- \ref (cross-ref. com.), 19, 22, 40, 70, 107, 139, 203, 243, **243**, 244, 246, 289, 301, 310, 388
- \ref* (hyperref cross-ref. com.), 310
- references
 - absolute, 20, 103, 190, **246–247**
 - bibliographic, 50, **251–257**, 316, 379, 414, 443
 - citing, 20, **256**
 - citing with BIB_TE_X, 444
 - including without citing, **445**
 - defining, **19**, 22, 37, 40, 139, 203, 219, 240, **243**, 316
 - symbolic, 70
 - symbolic, showing in margins, **246**, 301
 - to equations, **19**, 22, 40, 139, 140, 191, 203, 207, 243, 244, 254, 316
 - to pages, 19, 22, 243, **247**, 310, 486
 - and varioref package, 301
 - to sections, 19, 22, 107, 139, 203, **243**, 244, 246, 289, 301, 310, 388
- referencing, *see* cross-referencing *or* symbolic refer-
encing, *see* cross-referencing *or* sym-
bolic referencing
- \refname (redef. name), 381
- \refstepcounter (cross-ref. counter incr. com.), 409
- registered trademark (® text sym.), 64, 508
- registers, 382
- relations, binary, *see* binary relations
- relative
 - numbering of equations, 189, 190, 247
 - spaces, 90
 - units, 90, 92, 95, **411**
- \relax (do nothing com.), 390

- release dates, of L^AT_EX, 69, 239, 519
- remark (procl. style), **113**, 113–115
- `\renewcommand` (custom com.), 39, 71, 72, 83, 107, 116, 123, 257, 310, 374, 377, **378–381**, 383, 387, 388, 408–410
- `\renewcommand*` (custom com.), 377
- `\renewenvironment` (custom com.), 388, **389**
- `\renewenvironment*` (custom com.), 389
- renumbering, automatic, 19, 34, 522
- report (doc. class), 241, 291, **291–296**, 381, 516
- reports, technical, in B_{IV}T_EX database files, 440–441
- reqno
 - amsmath package option, 290
 - document class option, 19, 237, **286**, 295
- required
 - arguments, 95, 97, 160, 181, 262, 263, 522
 - multiple, 13, 53, 121, 178, 180, 181, 260, 299, 384, 412, 413
 - of commands, 13, **53**, 121, 178, 180, 181, 245, 260, 269, 412, 475, 480, 506
 - of environments, **53**, 119, 211, 213, 224, 226, 253–254, 256, 297, **388–390**, 478
 - use braces (`{ }`), 6, 10, 13, **53**, 54, 517
 - bibliographic fields, 431, 432, 434–442
- required (L^AT_EX distr. directory), **299**, 527
 - packages in, 300
- `\RequirePackage` (pack. com.), 177, 391
- research support (`\thanks` top matter com.), 72, 268–270, 284, 292
- resetting counters, 408, 409
- resolution, of Type 1 fonts, 531
- Return key, 7, 9, 47, 137, 521
- `\rfloor` (`|` math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\rhd` (`▷` math op.), 496
- `\rho` (ρ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\right` (math delim.), 41, **149–150**, 152, 168, 224
 - blank, 150, 166
 - must be balanced, 150, 204
- `right` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 362
- right double quote (`"`)
 - text symbol, 59, 64, 508
 - typing, 9
- right justification of text, 10, 51
- right single quote (`'`)
 - key, 7, 9, 46, **59**
 - text symbol, **59**, 509
- `\right)` (`)` math delimiter), 15–17, 41, 147, 149, 150, 168, 204, 223
- `\right.` (blank math delim.), 150
- `\right>` (`>`) math delimiter), 150
- `\right]` (`]` math delimiter), 15, 147, 165
- `\Rightarrow` (\Rightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rightarrow` (\rightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rightarrowtail` (\rightarrowtail math arrow), 497
- `\rightharpoondown` (\curvearrowright math arrow), 497
- `\rightharpoonup` (\curvearrowleft math arrow), 497
- `\rightleftarrows` (\Leftrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rightleftharpoons` (\rightleftharpoons math arrow), 497
- `\rightmargin` (length com.), 415, **416**, 419
- `\rightrightarrows` (\Rrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rightsquigarrow` (\rightsquigarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rightthreetimes` (\llcorner math op.), 496
- `\right|` (`|` math delimiter), 17, 150, 164, 173, 175
- ring (`°` text accent), 63, 506
- ring A (\AA), 64, 505
- ring a (\a), 64, 505
- `\risingdotseq` (\doteq binary rel.), 494
- Ritter, R. M., 555
- `\rm` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- `\rmfamily` (font shape com. dec.), 74, 107, 506
- `rmfamily` (font shape env.), 107
- `\Roman` (uppercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 408
- roman
 - document font family, **73**, 74, 532
 - font shape, 19, 72, 74, **107**, 289, 506
 - math, **183**, 183, 380
- `\roman` (lowercase roman-numeral counter-style com.), 107, 408
- roots, 18, 145–146
 - n -th, 18, **145**
 - placement of, 145
 - square, 18, **145**
 - using struts with, 187
- Rose, Kristoffer H., 230
- `rotate` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 358
- row separator (`\`), 17, 21, 22, 24, 82, 108, 119, 125, 126, 129, 157, 199, 200, 203, 204, 215, 219, 231, 263–267, 285, 292, 297
- Rowley, Chris, xxxi, 513, 514, 560
- `\Rightarrow` (\Rightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\Rsh` (\Rrightarrow math arrow), 497
- `\rtimes` (\rtimes math op.), 496
- rubber lengths, **383**, **414**, 416, 517
- `\rule` (box com.), 97–99, 124
- rules (lines), filling lines with, *see also* lines (rules), 90, 98

- running
 - `BIBTEX`, 443–452
 - `MakeIndex`, 465–467
- running heads, 240, **258–260**
 - author’s name in, 265
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - title in, 264, 285
- `\rVert` (\parallel math delimiter), 150
- `\rvert` ($|$ math delimiter), 150
- `\S` (§)
 - math symbol, 498
 - section text symbol, 64, 508
- sample files
 - `amsart.tpl`, 282
 - `amsproc.tpl`, 285
 - `babybeamer1.pdf`, 321–323
 - `babybeamer2.tex`, 321
 - `babybeamer3.tex`, 326
 - `babybeamer4.tex`, 331
 - `babybeamer5.tex`, 327
 - `babybeamer6.tex`, 330, 331
 - `babybeamer6block.tex`, 331
 - `babybeamer7.tex`, 331–335
 - `babybeamer8.tex`, 335
 - `babybeamer9.tex`, 337
 - `babybeamer10.tex`, 346
 - `beamerstructure.tex`, 339, 341
 - `cleardoublepage.sty`, 85
 - `covers.pdf`, 26
 - `firstarticle.tex`, 24, 35, 36
 - `firstarticlei.tex`, 458, 466, 467
 - `firstarticlei11.tex`, 27
 - `firstpresentation.tex`, 27
 - `fonttbl.tex`, 62, 118
 - `formulanote.tex`, 12–14, 38–39
 - `german.tex`, 536
 - `ggamsart.tpl`, 285
 - `inbibl.tpl`, 253
 - `legacy-article.tex`, 292, 293
 - `letter.tex`, 296–298
 - `Louisville.tex`, 27
 - `newlattice.sty`, 299, 384, 388, **390–400**, 400
 - `NoticesV.pdf`, 540
 - `NoticesVI.pdf`, 540
 - obtaining, 5
 - of presentations, 314–319
 - `products.pdf` (illus. file), 315
 - `quickbeamer.pdf`, 314
 - `quickbeamer.tex`, 314–315
 - `quickbeamer1.pdf`, 315
 - `quickbeamer1.tex`, 315, 316
 - `quickbeamer2.pdf`, 319
 - `quickbeamer2.tex`, 319
- `sample.cls` (doc. class), 8
- `secondarticle-ref.tex`, 308, 310
- `secondarticle.tex`, 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 262, 263, **274–278**, 376, 400, 443, 522
 - source file, 274–278
 - typeset, 274–281
- `secondarticleb.bib`, 443, **443–449**
- `secondarticleb.tex`, 427, 443, 445, 446, 449
- `secondarticleccom.tex`, 382, 388, **400**, 522
- `SymbolTables.pdf`, 11, 13
- `template.bib`, 429, 443, 452
- `textnote1.tex`, 8–9
- `textnote1bad.tex`, 11
- `textnote2.tex`, 9–11
- `topmat.tpl`, 271
- `sample.cls`, 8
- `sample.cls` (doc. class), 8
- samples
 - font, 301
 - of bibliographies, **251–253**, 429, 443, **443–444**, 452
 - of command (style) files, 299, 384, 388, **390–400**
 - of indexes, 458, 456–458
- `samples` (folder), 5, 8, 10–12, 24, 27, 38, 62, 85, 118, 178, 218, 253, 271, 274, 282, 285, 292, 296, 308, 314, 315, 319, 327, 330, 331, 341, 345, 346, 364, 382, 390, 400, 429, 443, 444, 456, 474, 522, 536, 540
 - creating, 5
- sans serif
 - document font family, **73**, 78, 532
 - font shape, 73, 74, 74, **107**, **183**, 183, 502, 506
 - Helvetica, 74, 532
- `\sb` (math subscript com.), 142, 143
- `\sc` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- `scale` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359
- scaling graphics
 - in figures, 250
- Schöpf, Rainer, 513, 560
- Schandl, Bernd, 107
- scharfes s (ß, SS), 64, 505
- Schleyer, Antoinette Tingley, 205, 555, 560
- `school` (BIBTEX database field), 431
- Schröder, Martin, 513
- scope
 - delimited by braces, **55–57**
 - of `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 230

- of command declarations, 108, **371–372**, 387
 - of commands, **55–57**, 74, 123
 - global and local, 57
 - setting, with environments, 81, 201
- `\scriptscriptstyle` (math font size com.), **186**, 191
- `\scriptsize` (font size com.), **77**, 78, 507
- `\scriptstyle` (math font size com.), **186**, 191
- `\scshape` (font shape com. dec.), 74, **75**, 107, 506
- `scshape` (font shape env.), 107
- `\searrow` (`\ math arrow`), 497
- `\sec` (sec math op.), 153, 500
- `secnumdepth` (counter), 410
- `secondarticle-ref.tex` (sample file), 308, 310
- `secondarticle.tex` (sample file), 108, 113, 115, 218, 257, 262, 263, **274–278**, 376, 400, 443, 522
 - source file, 274–278
 - typeset, 274–281
- `secondarticleb.aux` (sample aux. file), 447
- `secondarticleb.bbl` (sample bibl. file), 449
- `secondarticleb.bib` (sample bibl. file), 443, **443–449**
- `secondarticleb.blg` (sample `LaTeX` log file), 448
- `secondarticleb.tex` (sample file), 427, 443, 445, 446, 449
- `secondarticleccom.tex` (sample file), 382, 388, **400**, 522
- `\section` (struct. com.), **240–243**, 319, 339, 473
 - optional argument of, 241
- `section` (counter), 406, 407
- `section` (§ text sym.), 64, 508
- `\section*` (struct. com.), 241, 473
- sectioning
 - commands
 - optional arguments of, 241
 - provided by `amsart` doc. class, 242
 - provided by `article` doc. class, 242
 - provided by book doc. classes, 472–473
 - syntax of, 241
 - of articles, **240–243**
 - of books, **472–473**, 481
 - of documents, 8, 24–243, 251, 257, 274, 292, 296–298, 414, 443, 455, 465, **472–473**, 512, 522
 - of presentations, 316
- `\sectionname` (redef. name)
 - and `hyperref` package, 311
- sections, numbering of, 240
 - in books, 472
 - of equations within, 19, 140, 238
 - of proclamations within, 111
- `\see` (indexing cross-ref. com.), 463
- `\seename` (redef. name), 381
- `\selectfont` (font selection com.), 79
- selecting
 - files to include, **250**, 408, 479, **480**, 481
 - fonts, 72–80
- semicolon (;), 7, 46
- `semithick` (`TikZ` graphics pack. com.), 360
- sentences
 - terminating, 9, **48–51**
 - with periods, 268
- `series` (`LaTeX` database field), 431
- series commands, for fonts, *see under* font commands *and* font command declarations
- serif (font shape), *see also under* roman, 73, **73**
- Seroul, Raymond, 555, 560
- `\setbeamercolor` (beamer com.), 338
- `\setbeamertemplate` (beamer com.), 342
- `\setcounter` (counter-setting com.), 57, 221, **406**, 409
- `\setlength` (length setting com.), 40, 84, 97, **412**
- `setlength` environment, 81, 201
- `\setminus` (`\ math op.`), 496
- `setspace` (pack.), 83
- `\settodepth` (measurement com.), 413
- `\settoheight` (measurement com.), 413
- `\settowidth` (measurement com.), 413
- `\sffamily` (font shape com. dec.), 74, 78, 107, 506
- `sffamily` (font shape env.), 107
- SGML (Standard Generalized Markup Language), 513
- shape commands, for fonts, *see under* font commands *and* font command declarations
- `\sharp` (`# math sym.`), 498
- `shift` (`TikZ` graphics pack. com.), 359
- short
 - arguments, of custom commands, 377–378
 - arguments, of custom environments, 389
 - commands, **57**, 74, 263, 274
 - pages, warnings about, 517
- shorthand, *see under* custom commands
- `\shortmid` (`⊥ binary rel.`), 494
- `\shortparallel` (`⊥ binary rel.`), 494
- `\shoveleft` (align. com.), 202

- `\shoveright` (align. com.), 202
- `\show` (command-examination com.), 382, 382, 383, 521
- `\showhyphens` (hyph.-disp. com.), 67
- `showidx` (pack.), 299, 459
- `showkeys` (pack.), 246, 301
 - options, 246
- `\showthe` (value-examination com.), 97, 382, 383, 521
- shrinkable lengths, 85, 86, 382, 414, 416, 420, 517
- side-setting math symbols, 181–182
- sidebars, in beamer presentations, 316, 319, 331
- `\sideset` (math com.), 181–182
- `\Sigma` (Σ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\sigma` (σ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\signature` (letter com.), 297
- `\sim` (\sim binary rel.), 493
- `\simeq` (\simeq binary rel.), 493
- simple alignment, of formulas, 21, 21–23
- `\sin` (sin math op.), 17, 152, 153, 183, 500
- single
 - guillemet, 509
 - quote, 9
 - keys, 7, 15, 46, 59
 - text symbols, 509
- single quotation, 509
- single-lined boxes, *see under* boxes
- `\sinh` (sinh math op.), 153, 500
- size
 - of files
 - PDF, 306, 307
 - PostScript, 305
 - scanned, 307
 - of fonts, 40, 73, 78, 507, 77–507
 - commands for, *see under* font commands
 - document class options for, 285, 294
 - in math, 186
 - of hyperlinks in PDF files, 310
 - of math delimiters, 150–152, 168
 - of paper, document class options for, 286, 294
- `\sl` (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- slanted (font shape), 72, 74, 75, 78, 79, 107, 139, 140, 506
 - and italic correction, 77
 - context dependence of, 75
- slashed L's and O's (\mathfrak{l} , \mathfrak{L} , \mathfrak{o} , \mathfrak{O}), 64, 505
- slides, *see under* presentations, *see under* presentations
- `slides` (obs. doc. class), 291, 516
- `\slshape` (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 77–79, 107, 506
- `slshape` (font shape env.), 107
- slugs, 80, 81, 237, 288, 295
- `\SMALL` (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- `\Small` (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- `\small` (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- small caps (font shape), 72, 74, 75, 107, 506
 - for abbreviations and acronyms, 75, 482
- `\smaller` (font size com.), 78
- `\smallfrown` (\frown binary rel.), 494
- `\smallint` (\int math sym.), 498
- `smallmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 223, 224
- `\smallsetminus` (\setminus math op.), 496
- `\smallskip` (spacing com.), 40, 88
- `\smallsmile` (\smile binary rel.), 494
- `\smash` (spacing com.), 99, 188
 - optional argument of, 188
- `\smile` (\smile binary rel.), 493
- Snow, Wynter, 555, 560
- solid boxes, 97–98, *see also* struts
- `solution` (beamer distr. directory), 345
- `somedefs` (pack.), 301
- sort keys, 461–462
 - case sensitivity of, 468
- sorting, of index entries, 461–462
- source files, 5–7, 12, 24, 32, 37, 48, 65, 71, 129, 423, 453, 467, 475
 - errors in, 38–39, 521
 - putting on the Internet, 305–311
 - disadvantages of, 305
 - readability of, 13, 49, 138, 163, 367–371, 384, 422
 - structure of, *see also* document typesetting, 5, 11, 20, 34, 36, 38, 47, 58, 516, 521
 - white space in, 14
- sources, for fonts, 534
- `\sp` (math superscript com.), 142, 143, 167
- space bar, 7, 9, 47, 313, 321
- spaces
 - at the beginning of a line, 48, 87
 - at the end of a line, 48, 49, 68
 - blue, *see also* tie, unbreakable spaces, nonbreakable spaces, 60
 - consist of glue, 517
 - expanding, 90–91
 - filling lines with, 90
 - in arguments of commands, 69
 - `\bibitem`, 256
 - `\cite`, 256
 - `\index`, 467–468
 - in command definitions, 371
 - in command names, 52
 - in custom commands, 302

- in delimited commands, 384–385
- in math environments, 137
- in `tabular` environments, 119
- in `\verb` commands, 132
- in `verbatim` environments, 130
- interword (`_`), 9, **50**, 54, 86, *174*, *510*
- multiple, act as one, 14, 48, 55
- separating words with, 9, **48**, 388, 433
- suppressing, 388, 464
- terminating commands with, 13, **52**, **138**
- typed for readability, 14, 49, 119, 371
- unbreakable (`\~` tie), **9**, 47, **50**, 59, **60**, 83, *510*
 - absorb spaces, 60
 - in `BITEX` databases, 433
 - with cross-references, 246
- visible (`_`), 9, 47
 - and `\verb*` command, 132
- spacing
 - between characters, 517
 - between dots with `\hdotsfor` commands, 221
 - between math symbols, 171–176
 - commands, *see* spacing commands
 - determined by document classes, 86
 - horizontal
 - in math, **13**, **138–139**, **171–176**, 221, 224
 - in text, 9, 40, **86–88**, 98, 110, 422, *503*, *510*
 - interword, 9, 48–51, 54, 60, 86, 388, 433, *510*
 - preventing removal of, 87
 - in text, **86–91**
 - intercolumn, 195, 197, 207, *208*
 - in aligned math environments, 212, 216
 - in `tabular` environments, 119
 - interline, 41, 152, 231, 374, 484
 - adjusting, **79**, 82–83, 88, 98
 - double, 83
 - rules
 - and delimited commands, 384–385
 - for commands, 52, 138
 - in arguments of `\index` commands, 467–468
 - in math, 13, 14, 138–139, 171–176, 187–188
 - in text, 9, 14, **48–51**, **86–91**
 - in `\text` commands, 138
 - vertical
 - adding to table of contents, 476
 - adjusting, 123, 483
 - adjusting with the `setspace` package, 83
 - in boxes, 99
 - in indexes, 257, 455
 - in math, **187–188**
 - in text, 40, **88–89**, 188, 382, 476, 484, 488
 - preventing removal of, 89
 - using the `setspace` package, 83
- spacing commands
 - avoiding direct use of, 483
 - horizontal, *see* horizontal spacing
 - vertical, *see* vertical spacing
- `\spadesuit` (\spadesuit math sym.), *498*
- `\spbrev` (\sim math accent), *158*, *502*
- `\spcheck` (\checkmark math accent), *158*, 167, *502*
- `\spddot` ($\ddot{\cdot}$ math accent), *158*, *502*
- `\spdot` ($\dot{\cdot}$ math accent), *158*, *502*
- special
 - braces, 13, 55, 57, 136, 137, 140
 - balancing, 56
 - characters, 11, 47, **60**, **61**, *61*, **62**, *505–509*
 - in `\index` commands, 463
 - keys, 7, 12, **47**, 60
- spelling checkers, 35
- `\sphat` ($\hat{\cdot}$ math accent), *158*, *502*
- `\sphericalangle` (\sphericalangle math sym.), *498*
- Spivak, Michael D., 512, 533
- `split` (subsid. math align. env.), *196*, 198, **217–220**, 286
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231
 - numbering of equations within, 217–219
 - rules for, 219
- splitting
 - documents into multiple files, 479–481
 - formulas across lines, 200–202
- `\sptilde` (\sim math accent), *158*, *502*
- `\sqcap` (\sqcap math op.), *496*
- `\sqcup` (\sqcup math op.), *496*
- `\sqrt` (\sqrt{x} math com.), 13, 18, **145**, 175
 - optional argument of, 53
- `\sqsubset` (\sqsubset binary rel.), *493*
- `\sqsubseteq` (\sqsubseteq binary rel.), *493*
- `\sqsupset` (\sqsupset binary rel.), *493*
- `\sqsupseteq` (\sqsupseteq binary rel.), *493*
- `\square` (\square math sym.), *498*
- square roots, 18, **145**
- `\SS` (SS), *64*, *505*
- `\ss` (k), *64*, *505*
- stacking math symbols, 41, 178–181
- `\stackrel` (symbol-building com.), 41

- Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML), 513
- `\star` (\star math op.), 496
- `start angle` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 355
- start of chapters, document class options for, 474
- `\stepcounter` (counter-incr. com.), 409
- sterling (£ text sym.), 509
- STIX
- `stix.pdf` (math symbol list), 178
 - fonts, 177
 - math symbols, 171–176
- `stix` (pack.), 177
- STIX math symbols, 178
- `stix.pdf` (math symbol list), 178
- `\stop` (interactive control com.), 521
- stretchable
- horizontal braces, 159–160
 - lengths, 86, 383, 414, 416, 517
 - lines, 160
 - math arrows, 160, 229–230
 - math delimiters, 41, 149–150
 - math symbols, 159–161
 - vertical spacing, in displayed text environments, 414
- STRING (bibl. entry type), 442
- structural commands
- `\appendix`, 243, 473
 - `\backmatter`, 473
 - `\chapter`, 241, 243, 292, 472, 472, 473
 - `\frontmatter`, 473
 - hierarchy of, 240, 241, 472
 - in presentations, 339
 - `\mainmatter`, 473
 - optional arguments of, 241
 - `\paragraph`, 240, 241, 472
 - `\paragraph*`, 241
 - `\part`, 241, 292, 472
 - provided by `amsart` doc. class, 242
 - provided by `article` doc. class, 242
 - provided by book doc. classes, 472–473
 - `\section`, 240–243, 473
 - `\section*`, 241, 473
 - `\subparagraph`, 240, 241, 472
 - `\subsection`, 240, 241, 472, 473
 - `\subsection*`, 473
 - `\subsubsection`, 240, 241, 472
 - syntax of, 241
- structures, theorem-like, *see* proclamations
- struts, 98–99, 123, 187
- style (sty) files, 238, 370, 390–400
- commands in, 391
 - terminating, 399
- style files, BibTeX, *see* `bst`
- styles
- bibliographical, *see also* `bst`, 256
 - for counters, 71, 107, 387, 408, 408–409, 418
 - of pages, 258–260
 - of proclamations, 113–115, 514
 - of tables, 124
 - text environments, 107
- `subarray` (subsid. math env.), 145, 157
- subentries, in indexes, 257, 455, 459, 460, 462
- `subequations` (disp. math env.), 190, 191, 206, 409
- subformulas
- indentation of, 205
 - rules for, 203–204, 210–211
 - shorthand commands for, 368–370, 376–377
- `\subitem` (index com.), 257, 455
- `\subjclass` (top matter com.)
- optional arguments of, 269
 - rules for using, 269
- `\subjclassname` (redef. name), 381
- subject classifications, AMS, 269
- `\subparagraph` (struct. com.), 240, 241, 472
- `subparagraph` (counter), 407
- subscripts, math, 15, 16, 142–143, 144, 165
- as limits, 16, 144, 153–155, 165, 166, 286, 380
 - as multiline limits, 157
 - double, 186
 - font size of, 186
 - with horizontal braces, 159
- `\subsection` (struct. com.), 240, 241, 339, 472, 473
- `subsection` (counter), 407
- `\subsection*` (struct. com.), 473
- `\subsectionname` (hyperref redef. name), 311
- `\Subset` (\Subset binary rel.), 494
- `\subset` (\subset binary rel.), 493
- `\subseteq` (\subseteq binary rel.), 493
- `\subsubseteq` (\subseteq binary rel.), 494
- `\subsetneq` (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\subsetneqq` (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- subsidiary math environments
- `aligned`, 198, 215–217, 231
 - `alignedat`, 215–217, 227, 231
 - and `\allowdisplaybreaks` commands, 231
 - `array`, 196, 198, 217, 220, 224–227, 227, 300, 513

- Bmatrix**, **223**
- bmatrix**, **223**
- cases, 23–24, *196*, 198, **227–228**
- CD, 228–230
- for aligning formulas, *196*, **197**, **215–220**, 231, 286
- gathered, 198, 215–217, 219, 231
- matrix, 16–17, *196*, 198, 220, **220–227**
- numbering of, 217, 219
- page breaks in, 230
- pmatrix**, 17, **223**
- smallmatrix**, 223, 224
- split, *196*, 198, **217–220**, 231, 286
- subarray**, 145, 157
- Vmatrix**, 167, **223**
- vmatrix**, 17, **223**
- \substack** (math com.), 145, 157, **157**
- substitution, of fonts, 78, 306, 485
- subsubentries, in indexes, 257, 455, **460**, 462
- \subsubitem** (index com.), 257, 455
- \subsubsection** (struct. com.), **240**, 241, 472
- subsubsection (counter), *407*
- \subsubsectionname** (redef. name), 310
- subtraction, 14, 47, 141
- \succ** ($>$ binary rel.), *493*
- \succapprox** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *494*
- \succcurlyeq** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *494*
- \succeq** (\geq binary rel.), *493*
- \succnapprox** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *495*
- \succneqq** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *495*
- \succnsim** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *495*
- \succsim** (\gtrsim binary rel.), *494*
- \sum** (Σ large math op.), 18, *156*, 185, *501*
 - with primes, 181
- sumlimits** (opt. of **amsmath** pack.), **287**
- sums, 18, 155
- \sup** (sup math op.), *153*, *500*
- superscripts, **15**, 16, **142–143**, 144, 158, 165
 - as limits, **16**, **144**, 153, 155, 165
 - as multiline limits, 157
 - in math
 - as limits, 286
 - font size of, 186
 - with horizontal braces, 159
 - in text, 299, *509*
- support, technical, *see* technical support
- \suppressfloats** (float com.), 251
- suppressing
 - creation of auxiliary files, 488, 518
 - hyperlinks in PDF files, 310
 - indents (**\noindent** com.), 84, 486
 - italic correction, 76–77
 - ligatures, **62**, 165, 369
 - line breaks (**\nolinebreak** com.), 83
 - loading of the **amsmath** package, 288
 - numbering, 199, 203
 - of equations, 22, 140, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219, 260
 - of first page of documents, 260
 - of proclamations, 113, 114, 387
 - of structural units, 241, 473
 - Overfull \hbox** warnings, 80
 - page breaks (**\nopagebreak** com.), 85
 - placement of floats, 251
 - q.e.d. symbol, 116
 - spaces, 388, 464
 - \Supset** (\supseteq binary rel.), *494*
 - \supset** (\supset binary rel.), *493*
 - \supseteq** (\supseteq binary rel.), *493*
 - \supseteqq** (\supseteq binary rel.), *494*
 - \supsetneq** (\supsetneq binary rel.), *495*
 - \supsetneqq** (\supsetneq binary rel.), *495*
 - \surd** (\surd math sym.), *498*
 - Sutor, Robert, 558
 - Swanson, Ellen, 205, 555, 560
 - \swapnumbers** (theorem-style com.), 115
 - \swarrow** (\swarrow math arrow), *497*
 - \symbol** (symbol com.), **61**, 299
 - symbol alphabets, math, **184**
 - blackboard bold, 184
 - calligraphic, 184
 - Euler Fraktur, 184
 - Greek, 184
 - symbolic references, showing in margins, **246**, 301
 - symbolic referencing, *see also* cross-referencing, *see also* cross-referencing, *see also* cross-referencing, **19–246**, 518
 - symbols
 - as footnote indicators, 71
 - math, 13, 38, 47, 115, *147–503*
 - alphabets, **184**
 - and delimiters, 16, 148, 150
 - bold, **185–186**, 289, 300
 - building new, 166, **178–182**, 376
 - classification of, **172–173**, 182
 - declaring types of, 182
 - end of proof, 97, 379
 - in text, 369
 - large, 215–217
 - negated, 181–182
 - shorthand commands for, 368
 - side-setting, 181–182
 - sizes of, 186
 - spacing of, 171–176
 - stacking, 41, 178–181

- STIX, 171–178
 - stretchable, 159–161
 - suppressing, 115, 116
 - text, 60, 63, 267, 506, 508, 509
- SymbolTables.pdf (sample file), 11, 13
- systems of equations, 212–213
- `\t` (^ tie text accent), 63, 506
- T1 font encoding, 66, 509, 535
- tab
 - character, 47, 48, 52, 86
 - Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- Tab key, 7, 9, 47
- tabbing (display text env.), 125–127
- table (counter), 407
- table (float env.), 248–249
 - optional arguments of, 250, 488
 - placement of, 486, 488
- table* (float env.), 249
- `\tablename` (redef. name), 381
 - and hyperref package, 311
- `\tableofcontents` (front-matter com.), 316, 475, 519
- tables, 117–124, 125, 226, 249, 250, 301, 513
 - captions in, 27, 118, 248, 478
 - fragile commands in, 58
 - commands for, 27, 119, 121–124, 248, 478
 - cross-referencing of, 118
 - designing, 124
 - double-column, 249
 - float controls, 118
 - forcing typesetting of, 85
 - hyphenation, 515
 - intersection of lines in, 124, 301
 - lists of, *see under* lists
 - multiline entries in, 122
 - multipage, 301
 - numbering of, 248
 - placement of, 486, 488
 - style of, 124
 - typeset inline, 117
- tables of contents, 240, 309, 475–477
 - adding a line to, 475–476, 489
 - adding vertical spacing to, 476
 - auxiliary file (toc), 475, 488, 519
 - commands, 475, 476
 - depth of, 410
 - fragile commands in, 58, 477
 - in frames, 316
 - in presentations, 345
 - typesetting, 475–477
- tabs, setting, 125
- tabular (table env.), 62, 117–124, 226, 249, 300, 301, 513
 - arguments of, 119
 - optional, 119
 - breaking lines in, 119
 - column-formatting in, 119
 - horizontal lines in, 119, 121
 - intercolumn space in, 119
 - `\parbox` in, 95
 - rules for, 119
 - vertical lines in, 119
 - width of columns in, 120
- tabularx (pack.), 301
- `\tag`, 20, 189, 189, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219, 246
- `\tag*`, 189
- tags (names for equations), 20, 189–191, 199, 201, 203, 206, 217, 219, 246
 - top-or-bottom placement of, 286
- `\tan` (tan math op.), 153, 500
- `\tanh` (tanh math op.), 153, 500
- Tantau, Till, 313, 347, 350, 554, 560
- `\tau` (τ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\tbinom` (inline-style binomial com.), 143
- tbtags (doc. class opt.), 286
- technical reports, in B₁B₁T₁E₁X database files, 440–441
- technical support
 - on the Internet, 529
 - provided by T₁E₁X users groups, 528
 - provided by the AMS, 529
- TECHREPORT (bibl. entry type), 431, 440–441
- template.bib (sample bibl. file), 429, 443, 452
- templates, 261, 294
 - bibliographical, 251, 429, 443, 452
 - customizing
 - for AMS document classes, 282–285
 - ggamsart.tpl, 285
 - myams.tpl, 282–285
 - personalized
 - making read-only, 285
- terminating
 - captions, 478
 - commands, 10, 13, 14, 52, 54, 65, 131, 138
 - environments, 52
 - fields in B₁B₁T₁E₁X database entries, 451
 - files, 399, 480
 - lines, 69, 142, 371
 - TikZ, 351
 - paragraphs, 41, 48, 83
 - sentences, 9, 48–51, 268
- T₁E₁X, 31, 32, 511

- commands, 39, 383, 385
 - to avoid using, 483
- commands in L^AT_EX, 484
- distribution, 515
- extensibility of, 31
- history of, 511–515
- inner workings of, 515
- inputs folders, 532–533
- layers of, 515–516
- Plain, 515
- programming in, 31
- resources on the Internet, 529
- structure of, 515
- users groups, *see* T_EX users groups
and TUG
- \TeX (T_EX com.), 63
- T_EX users groups, 525–529, 535
- TeX Writer
 - for iPad, 540, 550–551
- tex4ht (opt. of hyperref pack.), 307
- T_EX Live (TUG DVD/CD), 529
- Texpad
 - for iPad, 540, 544–550
- text, 6
 - accents, 53, 63, 506
 - blocks, width of, 260
 - boxes, *see* text boxes
 - centering, *see* centering text, **center**
(text align. env.), *and* **\centering**,
see centering text, **center** (text
align. env.), *and* **\centering**
 - custom commands for, 370
 - editors, 5, 6, 12, 32, 36, 47, 68, 72,
369, 543
 - framing, 93
 - in math mode, 13, **18**, 66, 83, 91, 138,
146–147, 164, 183, 213–215, 229,
289
 - specifying fonts for, 146
 - in tables
 - multicolumn, 121–124
 - multiline, 122
 - mode, 6
 - spacing in, **86–91**
 - style commands, *see* text style com-
mands
 - symbols, *see* text symbols
 - typing, 45–99
 - using math symbols in, 369
 - white space in, 86–91
- \text (box com.), 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, **91**,
146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289
 - spacing rules in, 138
- text boxes, 91–99
 - alignment of contents in, 92, 96
 - behave as single characters, 91
 - commands for
 - \framebox**, 93
 - \makebox**, 91, **91**, 92–94, 96, 98
 - \mbox**, 91
 - \parbox**, 91, 93, **95**, 122, 413
 - \raisebox**, 99, 177
 - \rule**, 97–99, 124
 - \text**, 13, 18, 66, 67, 83, **91**, 138,
146–147, 164, 165, 193, 229, 289
 - environments for **minipage**, 91, 93, 96,
388, 389
 - framed, **93–94**
 - measurements of, 413
 - measuring, *see* measurements
 - single line, 91–93, 146
 - vertical alignment of, 96, 99
- text environments, 101–133
 - and stretchable vertical space, 414
 - blank lines in, 41, 102
 - for abstracts, *see* **abstract**
 - for alignment, 51, 90, **108**, 118, 215,
414, 422
 - for boxes, *see under* text boxes
 - for documents, *see* **document**
 - for indexes, *see* **theindex**
 - for letters, *see* **letter**
 - for lists, *see* list text environments,
see list text environments
 - for styles, *see under* text style
 - for tables, *see* tables
 - rules for, 102
- text mode, **46**
- text style commands
 - avoiding direct use of, 482
 - \emph**, 6, 10, 51, 74, **75**, 325, 506
 - \textbf**, 10, 57, 74, **77**, 147, 289, 325,
506
 - \textit**, 74, **75**, 325, 506
 - \textmd**, 74, **77**, 506
 - \textnormal**, **74**, 74, 146, 506
 - \textrm**, 74, 289, 506
 - \textsc**, 74, **75**, 506
 - \textsf**, 74, 506
 - \textsl**, 74, **75**, 506
 - \texttt**, 10, 60, 74, 506
 - \textup**, 74, **75**, 506
- text style environments
 - bfseries**, 107
 - em**, 107
 - itshape**, 107
 - rmfamily**, 107
 - scshape**, 107
 - sffamily**, 107
 - slshape**, 107

- ttfamily, 107
- upshape, 107
- text symbols, 61, 64
 - commands, 60, 63, 267, 506, 508, 509
 - typing, 58–63
- \textasciicircum ($\hat{\ }$ circumflex), 64, 508
- \textasciitilde ($\tilde{\ }$ tilde), 509
- \textasteriskcentered ($*$ asterisk), 61, 64, 508
- Textastics
 - L^AT_EX app for iPad, 544
- \textbackslash (\ backslash), 60, 64, 508
- \textbar (| vertical bar), 60, 64, 508
- \textbf (font weight com.), 10, 57, 74, 77, 147, 289, 325, 506
- \textbullet (\bullet bullet), 64, 508
- \textcircled ($\textcircled{\ }$), 63, 64, 508
- \textcolor (beamer com.), 336
- \textcompwordmark (lig.-suppr. com.), 62, 369, 422
- \textemdash (— em dash), 64, 508
- \textendash (– em dash), 64, 508
- \textexclamdown ($\! \!$ exclamation mark), 46
- \textgreater ($>$ greater than), 64, 508
- \textit (font shape com.), 74, 75, 75, 325, 506
- \textless ($<$ less than), 64, 508
- \textmd (font weight com.), 74, 77, 506
- \textnormal (font shape com.), 74, 74, 146, 506
- textnote1.tex (sample file), 8–9
- textnote1bad.tex (sample file), 11
- textnote2.tex (sample file), 9–11
- \TextOrMath (text and math mode com.), 299
- \textperiodcentered (\cdot midpoint), 64, 508
- \textquestiondown ($\! ?$ question mark), 64, 508
- \textquotedbl (Eur. quot. mark), 509
- \textquotedblleft (“ left double quote), 64, 508
- \textquotedblright (” right double quote), 64, 508
- \textquoteleft (‘ left single quote), 509
- \textquoteright (’)
 - Eur. quot. mark, 509
 - right single quote, 509
- \textregistered ($\text{\textcircled{R}}$ registered trademark), 64, 508
- \textrm (font shape com.), 74, 289, 506
- \textsc (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506
- \textsf (font shape com.), 74, 506
- \textsl (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506
- \textstyle (math font size com.), 186, 191
- \textsubscript, 239, 299
- \textsuperscript (a), 299, 509
- \texttrademark (TM trademark), 509
- \texttt (font shape com.), 10, 60, 74, 506
- \textup (font shape com.), 74, 75, 506
- textures (opt. of hyperref pack.), 307
- \textvisiblespace, 9, 47, 48, 509
- \textwidth (length com.), 260, 406, 411
- tfm (L^AT_EX font metric file), 516
- \tfrac ($\frac{x}{y}$), 141, 187
- \TH (Thorn Eur. char.), 509
- \th (thorn Eur. char.), 509
- \thanks (top matter com.), 72, 268–270, 284, 292
- \the (value expansion com.), 63–65, 70, 71, 97, 408
- thebibliography (bibliography env.), 50, 251–257, 414, 443, 452
 - argument of, 253, 256
- \thechapter (the value of counter chapter), 408
- \thefootnote (the value of counter footnote), 71, 72
- theindex (index env.), 257, 414, 455, 465
 - commands in, 257, 455
- themes (beamer distr. directory), 344
- themes, for beamer presentations, 316, 343–345
 - Berkeley, 316, 319, 320, 344
 - color options, 344
 - Warsaw, 28, 319, 320, 344
- theorem (proclamation env.), 35, 109, 112, 330, 388
 - logical design of, 35
 - visual design of, 35
- theorem (pack.), 301
- theorem-like structures, see proclamations
- \theoremname (hyperref redef. name), 311
- \theoremstyle* (procl. com.), 113–115
- \theoremstyle (procl. com.), 113–115
- \theparentequation (the value of counter parentequation), 409
- \therefore (\therefore binary rel.), 494
- \thesection (the value of counter section), 408
- theses, in B^IE_TX database files, 439–440
- \thesubsection (the value of counter subsection), 408
- \Theta (Θ Greek char.), 148, 492
- \theta (θ Greek char.), 147, 492
- thick (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 357, 360
- \thickapprox (\approx binary rel.), 494
- \thicksim (\sim binary rel.), 494
- \thickspace (spacing com.), 174, 503, 510
- thin (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360

- `\thinspace` (spacing com.), 16, 51, 59, 174, 174, 503, 510
- `\thispagestyle` (set page style), 260, 489
- thorn (Eur. char), 509
- Thorup, Kresten K., 410
- tie (\sim spacing com.), 9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510
 - absorbs spaces, 60
 - in BibTeX databases, 433
 - with cross-references, 246
- tie (\sim text accent), 63, 506
- TikZ (graphics pack.), 27, 249, 350
 - above com., 357
 - align com., 357
 - arc com., 355
 - around com., 359
 - arrow com., 361–363
 - below com., 354, 357
 - center com., 358
 - circle com., 351–355, 359
 - code.tex (sample file), 364
 - colors, 360
 - components, 353–357
 - controls com., 356
 - curves, 356–357
 - custom commands, 353
 - dashed com., 360–362
 - dotted com., 356, 360
 - `\draw` (graphics com.), 352, 360
 - ellipse com., 355, 358
 - end angle com., 355
 - every picture com., 353
 - fill com., 352
 - grid com., 350, 352
 - in com., 356, 361
 - labels, 352, 357
 - left com., 357, 362
 - line width com., 351, 353, 360
 - `\node` com., 357
 - optional arguments, 350, 351
 - out com., 356, 361
 - path attributes, 360–363
 - radius com., 351
 - rectangle com., 355, 358, 359
 - right com., 357, 362
 - rotate com., 358
 - scale com., 359
 - semithick com., 360
 - shift com., 359
 - start angle com., 355
 - terminating lines, 351
 - thick com., 357, 360
 - thin com., 360
 - tikz-cd manual, 361, 364
 - tikzpicture (graphics env.), 350
 - `\tikzset` com., 353
 - transformations, 358–360
 - ultra thick com., 360
 - ultra thin com., 360
 - very thick com., 356, 360, 361
 - very thin com., 360
 - xscale com., 359
 - yscale com., 359
- tikzpicture (graphics env.), 350
- `\tikzset` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 353
- tilde (\sim)
 - text accent, 63, 506
 - text symbol, 509
- `\tilde` (\tilde math accent), 16, 158, 502
- `\time` (time com.), 65
- time commands
 - `\day`, 65
 - `\month`, 65
 - `\time`, 65
 - `\today`, 10, 54–55, 65, 132, 292, 385, 535
 - `\year`, 65
- Times, in L^AT_EX documents, 532–533
- `\times` (math op.), 14, 141, 496
- times (pack.), 532
- times.sty (PSNFSS distr. file), 532
- `\Tiny` (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- `\tiny` (font size com.), 77, 78, 507
- Tisseau, Gérard, 364, 560
- `\title` (top matter com.), 28, 90, 237, 285, 292, 319, 474
 - optional arguments of, 28, 263, 264, 272, 285
- title (BibTeX database field), 430–432, 439
- title pages, 263, 522
 - document class options for, 237, 287, 288, 295
 - environments for, 474
 - footnotes on, 72
 - of articles, 237, 239
 - of books, 473, 474
 - of presentations, 27
- titlepage (doc. class opt.), 237, 287, 295, 474
- `\titlepage` (beamer com.), 316
- titlepage (front matter env.), 474
- titles
 - in bibliographies
 - rules for typing, 432–433
 - in running heads, 264, 285
 - of articles, 263, 285
 - of structural commands, 240
 - fragile commands in, 58
- `\to` (\rightarrow math arrow), 497

- toc (table of contents files), 475–477, 488, 519
 - commands in, 477
- tocdepth (counter), 410, 475
- \today (time com.), **10**, 54–55, 65, 132, 292, 385, 535
- tokens, 516
- tools (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 299–302
 - packages in, 300–302
- tools (pack.), 300
- \top (T math sym.), 498
- top matter, 25, 237, **239**, 262
 - article information
 - of AMS documents, 263–265
 - commands, 28, 65, 72, 90, 260, 263, **263–271**, 272, 274, 284, 285, 319, 474
 - blank lines in, 263
 - examples of, 271–274
 - with multiple authors, 270–271
 - customizing templates, 282
 - is document-class specific, 239
 - of AMS documents, 263–274
 - AMS information, 269–270
 - author information, 265–269
 - errors with, 273–274
 - examples, 271–274
 - with multiple authors, 270
 - of books, 239
 - of presentations, 27, 314–315, 319
- top-or-bottom, placement of tags, 286
- topmat.tpl (sample file), 271
- \topsep (length com.), 415, **416**
- \totalheight (length com.), 92, **93**, 94, 96
- trace (pack.), 301
- trademark text symbols (™ ®), 64, 508, 509
- trans (beamer doc. class opt.), 346
- transformations, TikZ graphics, 358–360
- translation, of line ending characters, 47
- \translator (top matter com.), 264
- \triangle (Δ math sym.), 498
- \triangledown (∇ math sym.), 498
- \triangleleft (\triangleleft math op.), 496
- \trianglelefteq (\trianglelefteq binary rel.), 494
- \triangleq (\triangleq binary rel.), 494
- \triangleright (\triangleright math op.), 496
- \trianglerighteq (\trianglerighteq binary rel.), 494
- trivlist (list text env.), 422
- \tt (obs. L^AT_EX 2.09 font com.), 79
- \ttfamily (font shape com. dec.), 74, 107, 126, 506
- ttfamily (font shape env.), 107
- TUG (T_EX Users Group), 5, 525, 528–529
- TUGboat, 528
- two-letter font commands, *see under* font commands
- twocolumn (doc. class opt.), 69, 86, 249, **287**, 295, 296
 - and footnotes, 301
- \twocolumn (double-column com.), 86
- \twoheadleftarrow (\leftarrow math arrow), 497
- \twoheadrightarrow (\rightarrow math arrow), 497
- twoside (doc. class opt.), 69, 237, **287**, 295, 296, 474
- type (BIB_TE_X database field), 431
- type foundries, 532, 534
- types
 - of commands, 57–58
 - of math symbols, **172**, 186
 - declaring, 182
- typeset
 - example articles
 - secondarticle.tex, 274–281
 - files, 5, 6
 - DVI format, 517
 - PDF format, 6, 250, 307, 517
- typesetting
 - indexes, 465–467
 - source files, **5**, 11, 20, 34, 36, 38, 47, 58, 521
 - tables of contents, 475–477
 - with L^AT_EX, 32, 33, **512**, 516–520
- typesetting source files
 - iPad, 548, 551
- typewriter style
 - document font family, **73**, 74, **74**
 - font shape, 10, 60, 62, 74, **107**, 126, 369, 506, 532
 - fonts, 72
 - in math, **183**, 183, 502
- typing
 - bibliographic entries, 432–442
 - accents in, 433
 - names in, 432
 - rules for, 449–452
 - titles in, 432–433
 - books, 471–489
 - exercises, 478
 - footnotes, 71–72
 - math, 24, 135–193
 - poetry, 128–129
 - programs, 125–127, 129–131
 - quotations, 127–128
 - text, 45–99
 - symbols, 58–63
- typographical
 - errors, 35
 - rules for
 - abbreviations and acronyms, 75

- initials, 51
- `\u` breve text accent (\breve), 63, 506
- UK TUG (United Kingdom T_EX Users Group)
 - Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), 529
- `\ulcorner` (\ulcorner math delimiter), 149, 499
- `ultra thick` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- `ultra thin` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- Umeki, Hideo, 260
- umlaut ($\ddot{}$ text accent), 7, 11, 63, 506, 536
- unbreakable
 - hyphens, 67
 - spaces (\sim tie), 9, 47, 50, 59, 60, 83, 510
 - absorb spaces, 60
 - in BibT_EX databases, 433
 - with cross-references, 246
- `\underbrace` (math sym.), 159
 - with a subscript, 159
- underdot text accent ($\dot{}$), 63, 506
- `\underleftarrow` ($\xleftarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- `\underletrightarrow` ($\xleftrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- `\underline` ($\underline{}$ math line sym.), 160
- `\underrightarrow` ($\xrightarrow{}$ math arrow), 160
- underscore ($_$), 61
 - text symbol, 64, 508
 - in e-mail addresses, 267
- underscore text accent ($_$), 63, 506
- `\underset` (symbol-building com.), 166, 180
- units
 - absolute, *see under* absolute
 - dimensional, *see under* dimensional units
 - logical, *see under* logical
 - math, *see* mu
 - relative, *see under* relative
- UNIX, 452, 512
 - FTP clients, 526
 - L^AT_EX implementations, 467
- `\unlhd` (\unlhd math op.), 496
- unmarked footnotes, 269
- unnumbered
 - environments, 203
 - equations, 19, 22, 140, 189, 198, 199, 201, 203, 206, 219, 316
 - items, 103
 - math environments, 199
 - proclamations, 113, 114, 387
 - structural units, 241, 473
- `unpacked` (L^AT_EX distr. directory), 299, 527
- UNPUBLISHED (bibl. entry type), 441
- `\unrhd` (\unrhd math op.), 496
- `\Uparrow` (\Uparrow)
 - math arrow, 497
 - math delimiter, 149, 499
- `\uparrow` (\uparrow)
 - math arrow, 497
 - math delimiter, 149, 499
- updates
 - to AMSFonts and packages, 520
 - to L^AT_EX, 178, 519
- `\Uppdownarrow` (\Uppdownarrow)
 - math arrow, 497
 - math delimiter, 149, 499
- `\updownarrow` (\updownarrow)
 - math arrow, 497
 - math delimiter, 149, 499
- `\upharpoonleft` (\upharpoonleft math arrow), 497
- `\upharpoonright` (\upharpoonright math arrow), 497
- `\uplus` (\uplus math op.), 496
- `\upn` (font shape com.), 140
- uppercase counter styles
 - letters ($\backslash\alpha$), 408
 - roman numerals (\backslashroman), 408
- `upref` (pack.), 288, 289
- upright (font shape), 19, 72, 73, 74, 75, 107, 139, 140, 387, 420, 506
 - context dependence of, 75
- `\uproot` (root-adjustment com.), 145, 146
- `\upshape` (font shape com. dec.), 74, 75, 107, 387, 420, 506
- `upshape` (font shape env.), 107
- `\Upsilon` (Y Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\upsilon` (v Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\upuparrows` (\upuparrows math arrow), 497
- `\urcorner` (\urcorner math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\URL` (bibl. com.), 431
- URL (Uniform Resource Locator), 268, *see also* hyperlinks
- `\urladdr` (top matter com.), 268, 268, 284, 310
- `\usecolortheme` (beamer com.), 344
- `\usecounter` (list counter com.), 418
- `\usefonttheme` (beamer com.), 345
- `\usepackage` (preamble com.), 24, 54, 237, 282, 307, 308, 314, 370, 391, 456, 521
 - can load multiple packages, 238
- user-defined commands, *see* custom commands
- users groups, 525, 527, 528–529, 535
- `\usetheme` (beamer com.), 27, 316, 344
- UNIX, 481
- `\v` caron text accent (\vcaron), 63, 506
- `\value` (value of counter), 409
- values, of counters, 34, 71, 409
 - printing, 63–65, 97, 408
- van Oostrum, Piet, 260, 525

- `\varDelta` (Δ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varepsilon` (ε Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varGamma` (Γ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varinjlim` (\varinjlim math op.), 153, 500
- `varioref` (pack.), 246, 301
- `\varkappa` (\varkappa Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varLambda` (Λ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varliminf` (\varliminf math op.), 153, 500
- `\varlimsup` (\varlimsup math op.), 153
- `\varnothing` (\emptyset math sym.), 498
- `\varOmega` (Ω Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varPhi` (Φ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varphi` (φ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varPi` (Π Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varpi` (ϖ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varprojlim` (\varprojlim math op.), 153, 500
- `\varpropto` (\propto binary rel.), 494
- `\varPsi` (Ψ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varrho` (ϱ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varSigma` (Σ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varsigma` (ς Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\varsubsetneq` (\subsetneq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\varsubsetneqq` (\subsetneqq neg. binary rel.), 495
- `\varsupsetneq` (\supsetneq binary rel.), 495
- `\varsupsetneqq` (\supsetneqq binary rel.), 495
- `\varTheta` (Θ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\vartheta` (ϑ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\vartriangle` (Δ math op.), 496
- `\vartriangleleft` (\triangleleft math op.), 496
- `\vartriangleright` (\triangleright math op.), 496
- `\varUpsilon` (Υ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\varXi` (Ξ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\Vdash` (\Vdash binary rel.), 494
- `\vDash` (\vDash binary rel.), 494
- `\vdash` (\vdash binary rel.), 493
- `\vdots` (vertical ellipsis), 144, 223
- `\vec` (\vec{x} math accent), 16, 158, 382, 502
- `\vee` (\vee math op.), 496
- `\veebar` (\veebar math op.), 496
- `\verb` (inline verbatim com.), 131–133
 - in aligned math environments, 132
 - in argument of other commands, 132
 - spaces in, 132
- `\verb*` (inline verbatim com.), 132
 - delimiters with, 131–133
- `verbatim` (disp. text env.), 102, **129–131**, 301, 346, 513
 - blank lines in, 130
 - characters following, 130
 - simulating with `\verb`, 132
- `verbatim` (pack.), 70, 71, 130, 131, 301, 391
- `verse` (disp. text env.), **128**, 414
 - breaking lines in, 129
- versions
 - of AMS packages and AMSFonts, 288, 289, 514, 515, 520
 - of L^AT_EX packages, 519–520
- `\Vert` (\parallel math delimiter), 149, 499
- `\vert` ($|$ math delimiter), 149, 499
- vertical
 - alignment, of boxes, 95, 96, 99
 - bar ($|$ text symbol), 64, 508
 - ellipses, 144, 223
 - glue, 517
 - lines
 - in CD environments, 229
 - in `tabular` environments, 119
 - math arrows, 229
- vertical spacing
 - adding after `\`, 81
 - adding to table of contents, 476
 - adjusting
 - with `\arraystretch`, 123
 - with struts, 123
 - adjusting with the `setspace` package, 83
 - between marginal notes, 411
 - between paragraphs, 411
 - commands
 - `\bigskip`, 40, **88**
 - `\enlargethispage`, **85**, 486, 488
 - `\medskip`, **88**
 - `\smallskip`, 40, **88**
 - `\smash`, 99, 188, **188**
 - to avoid using, 483
 - `\vfill` (fill com.), 91
 - `\vphantom`, 89, 187
 - `\vskip`, 40
 - `\vspace`, 40, 88
 - `\vspace*`, 89
 - in boxes, 99
 - in indexes, 257, 455
 - in math mode, 187–188
 - in text, 40, **88–89**, 382, 476, 484, 488
 - preventing removal of, 89
 - stretchable, 414
 - using the `setspace` package, 83
- very thick** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 356, 360, 361
- very thin** (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 360
- `\vfill` (space fill com.), 91
- viewers
 - DVI, 517, 527
 - PDF, *see under* PDF
- viewing typeset files, 517
 - DVI format, 517
 - PDF format, 6, 250, 307, 517
- `virtex` (T_EX program), 515

- visible spaces (`_`), 9, 47
 - and `\verb*` command, 132
- Visual
 - Guide, to multiline math formulas, **195**
- visual
 - design, 35, 235, 258–260, 345
 - markup, 522
 - guide, to multiline math formulas, *196*
- `Vmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 167, **223**
- `vmatrix` (subsid. math env.), 17, **223**
- volume (BIBTEX database field), 430, 431
- von, in bibliographic entries, 432
- `\vphantom` (spacing com.), 89, 187
- `\vskip` (spacing com.), 40
- `\vspace` (spacing com.), 40, 88
- `\vspace*` (spacing com.), 89
- `vtex` (opt. of `hyperref` pack.), 307
- `\Vvdash` (\Vdash binary rel.), *494*
- warning messages
 - about hyphenation, 80
 - Abstract should precede `\maketitle`
 - in AMS document classes, 239
 - Characters dropped after
 - `\end{verbatim}`, 130
 - `\end` occurred inside a group at level *x*, 56
 - `\end` occurred when `\xxx` on line *yy*
 - was incomplete, 480
 - generated by overlapping braces, 56
 - Label(s) may have changed, 245
 - line numbers in, 11
 - lines are too wide, 11–81
 - No auxiliary output files, 518
 - Overfull `\hbox`, **11–81**, 517
 - suppressing, 80
 - recorded in log file, **34**, 80
 - regarding font substitution, 78
 - Rerun to get cross-references right, 245
 - Underfull `\vbox` has occurred
 - while `\output` is active, 517
 - Warning-missing *field* in *label*, 449–452
 - when using `\NeedsTeXFormat`, 238, 391, 519
 - with BIBTEX, 449–452
- Warsaw (beamer theme), 28, 319, *320*, 344
- `\wedge` (\wedge math op.), *496*
- weight, of fonts, *see under* font environments, font commands *and* font declarations
- Weisberg, Jonathan, 544
- white (TikZ color), 360
- white space
 - adjusting, 40, 484
 - and binary operations and relations, 139
 - between marginal notes, 411
 - between paragraphs, 411
 - commands, avoiding direct use of, 483
 - determined by document classes, 86
 - horizontal, 52, 86, 90, 126, 138, 173–175, 211, 212, 302, 372–373, *503*, *510*
 - in math mode, 169, 221, 224
 - in text mode, 9, 14, **48–51**, **86–88**, **90–91**, 98, 110, 422
 - in arguments of commands, 69
 - in command definitions, 371
 - in command names, 52
 - in delimited commands, 384–385
 - in math, 13, 37, 88–89, 138–139, 171–176, 187–188
 - adjusting, 88
 - in source files, 138
 - in `tabular` environments, 119
 - in text, 9, **86–91**, 388, 433, *503*, *510*
 - in `\verb` commands, 132
 - in `verbatim` environments, 130
 - suppressing, 388, 464
 - terminating commands with, 52
 - vertical, 86
 - adding to table of contents, 476
 - adjusting, 483
 - in math mode, 88–89, 187–188
 - in text mode, 40, 85, **88–89**, **91**, 188, 382, 484, 488
- `\widehat` ($\hat{}$ math accent), **158**, *158*, 168, *502*
- `\widetilde` ($\tilde{}$ math accent), **158**, *158*, *502*
- width
 - of columns in `tabular` environments, 120
 - of fonts, *see* font width
 - of text blocks, 260, 406, 411
 - of text boxes, 91–93, *413*
- `\width` (length com.), 92, **93**, 96
- word processors, 9
- words, are separated by spaces, 66
- work (folder), **5**, 8, 10, 11, 38, 161, 282, 308, 314, 315, 319, 331, 444
 - creating, 5
- `\wp` (\wp math sym.), *498*
- `\wr` (\wr math op.), *496*
- wrapping, of lines by text editors, 68
- `xcb` (exercise env.), 478
- `xcolor` (pack.), 313, 336

- options, 337
- `\Xi` (Ξ Greek char.), 148, 492
- `\xi` (ξ Greek char.), 147, 492
- `\xleftarrow` (stretchable math arrow), 160
- `xr` (pack.), 246, 301
- `\xrightarrow` (stretchable math arrow), 160
- `xscale` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359
- `xspace` (pack.), 302, 372–373
- `xy-pic` (pack.), 230

- Y&Y, 515, 531
- `\year` (time com.), 65
- `year` (BIBTEX database field), 430, 431
- `yscale` (TikZ graphics pack. com.), 359

- zero, specifying in arguments, 98
- `\zeta` (ζ Greek char.), 147, 492

George Grätzer

More Math Into L^AT_EX

5th edition

For over two decades, this comprehensive manual has been the standard introduction and complete reference for writing articles and books containing mathematical formulas. If the reader requires a streamlined approach to learning LaTeX for composing everyday documents, Grätzer's © 2014 *Practical LaTeX* may also be a good choice.

In this carefully revised fifth edition, the Short Course has been brought up to date and reflects a modern and practical approach to LaTeX usage. New chapters have been added on illustrations and how to use LaTeX on an iPad.

Key features:

- An example-based, visual approach and a gentle introduction with the Short Course
- A detailed exposition of multiline math formulas with a Visual Guide
- A unified approach to TeX, LaTeX, and the AMS enhancements
- A quick introduction to creating presentations with formulas

From earlier reviews:

Grätzer's book is a solution.

European Mathematical Society Newsletter

There are several LaTeX guides, but this one wins hands down for the elegance of its approach and breadth of coverage.

Amazon.com, Best of 2000, Editor's choice

A novice reader will be able to learn the most essential features of LaTeX sufficient to begin typesetting papers within a few hours of time... An experienced TeX user, on the other hand, will find a systematic and detailed discussion of LaTeX features.

Report on Mathematical Physics

A very helpful and useful tool for all scientists and engineers.

Review of Astronomical Tools

Professional Computing

ISBN 978-3-319-23795-4



► springer.com